



System i
Systems Management
Management Central

Version 5 Release 4





System i
Systems Management
Management Central

Version 5 Release 4

Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in “Notices,” on page 199.

Seventh Edition (February 2006)

This edition applies to version 5, release 4, modification 0 of IBM i5/OS (product number 5722-SS1) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions. This version does not run on all reduced instruction set computer (RISC) models nor does it run on CISC models.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1998, 2006.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Management Central 1

What's new for V5R4	1
Printable PDF	2
Getting started with Management Central	3
Before you begin	3
Configuring TCP prerequisite checklist	3
Management Central connection considerations	4
Installing Management Central	6
Checking for the most current MC code	6
Installing and accessing Management Central	7
Verifying the connection function	8
Setting up the central system	9
Setting up your central system for the first time	9
Management Central settings and options	10
Adding endpoint systems to your Management Central network	13
How to completely remove endpoints	14
Creating system groups in your Management Central network	14
Changing the central system setup	15
Management Central plug-ins	15
Backup, Recovery, and Media Services (BRMS) Clusters	16
Working with systems with partitions	17
Advanced Job Scheduler	17
Troubleshooting Management Central connections	18
Working with Management Central monitors	20
Monitor concepts	21
Management collection objects	22
Job monitors and Collection Services	23
The QYRMJOBSEL job	24
QZRCRSRVS jobs and their impact on performance	24
Special considerations	25
Creating a new monitor	26
Selecting the metrics	27
Specifying the threshold values	32
Specifying the collection interval	34
Specifying threshold run commands	35
Specifying event logging and actions	35
Applying thresholds and actions for a monitor	36
Viewing monitor results	37
Graph history concepts	37
Viewing graph history	38
Resetting triggered threshold for a monitor	39
Scenarios: iSeries Navigator monitors	39
Scenario: System monitor	39
Scenario: Job monitor for CPU utilization	41
Scenario: Job monitor with Advanced Job Scheduler notification	42
Scenario: Message monitor	43
Using other features of Management Central	44
Working with inventory	44
Viewing an inventory	45
How to use inventories	45

Running actions on an inventory	45
Searching a Management Central users and groups inventory	46
Extreme Support	46
Working with systems with partitions	46
Running commands with Management Central	47
Creating command definitions	48
Packaging and sending objects with Management Central	48
Distributing fixes to multiple systems with iSeries Navigator	49
Packaging and distribution considerations	50
Managing users and groups with Management Central	51
Sharing with other users in Management Central	53
Synchronizing date and time values	54
Synchronizing functions	55
Scheduling tasks or jobs with Management Central scheduler	55
Advanced Job Scheduler	57
Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless	57
Scheduling jobs with Advanced Job Scheduler	58
What's new in Advanced Job Scheduler for V5R4	58
Installing the Advanced Job Scheduler	60
Locate the scheduler	60
Setting up the Advanced Job Scheduler	61
Assigning the general properties	61
Specifying permission levels	62
Setting up a scheduling calendar	63
Setting up a holiday calendar	63
Setting up a fiscal calendar	65
Specifying a mail server to use for notification	65
Setting up multiple scheduling environments	65
Assigning data libraries to users	66
Managing the Advanced Job Scheduler	67
Creating and scheduling a job	67
Creating and scheduling a job group	67
Predefined schedules	67
Creating a temporary scheduled job	68
Scheduling job dependencies	69
The Work Flow Manager	70
Monitoring job activity for the Advanced Job Scheduler	73
Monitoring for messages with Advanced Job Scheduler	74
Creating and working with local data area	74
Creating and working with application controls and job controls	75
Working with notification	75
Working with library lists	77
Working with command variables	77
Working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless	78

Hardware and software requirements . . .	78
Selecting a device	78
Configuring your wireless environment . .	78
Connecting to your i5/OS operating system	80
Customizing your connection	81
Managing Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless	81
Troubleshooting the Advanced Job Scheduler	81
Related information for Management Central . .	83

Getting started with Management

Central	85
Before you begin	85
Configuring TCP prerequisite checklist . . .	85
Management Central connection considerations	85
Installing Management Central	87
Checking for the most current MC code . . .	88
Installing and accessing Management Central .	88
Verifying the connection function	89
Setting up the central system	90
Setting up your central system for the first time	90
Management Central settings and options . .	91
Adding endpoint systems to your Management Central network	94
How to completely remove endpoints	95
Creating system groups in your Management Central network	95
Changing the central system setup	96
Management Central plug-ins	97
Backup, Recovery, and Media Services (BRMS)	97
Clusters	97
Working with systems with partitions	98
Advanced Job Scheduler	98
Troubleshooting Management Central connections	98

Working with Management Central monitors 103

Monitor concepts	104
Management collection objects.	104
Job monitors and Collection Services	106
The QYRMJOBSEL job	106
QZRCRSVS jobs and their impact on performance.	107
Special considerations	108
Creating a new monitor	109
Selecting the metrics	109
Specifying the threshold values	115
Specifying the collection interval	117
Specifying threshold run commands.	117
Specifying event logging and actions	118
Applying thresholds and actions for a monitor	119
Viewing monitor results	119
Graph history concepts	120
Viewing graph history	121
Resetting triggered threshold for a monitor . .	121
Scenarios: iSeries Navigator monitors	122
Scenario: System monitor	122
Scenario: Job monitor for CPU utilization . . .	123
Scenario: Job monitor with Advanced Job Scheduler notification	124

Scenario: Message monitor	126
-------------------------------------	-----

Using other features of Management

Central	129
Working with inventory	129
Viewing an inventory	129
How to use inventories	129
Running actions on an inventory	130
Searching a Management Central users and groups inventory	130
Extreme Support	131
Working with systems with partitions	131
Running commands with Management Central .	131
Creating command definitions.	132
Packaging and sending objects with Management Central	132
Distributing fixes to multiple systems with iSeries Navigator	133
Packaging and distribution considerations. . . .	134
Managing users and groups with Management Central	135
Sharing with other users in Management Central	137
Synchronizing date and time values.	138
Synchronizing functions	139
Scheduling tasks or jobs with Management Central scheduler.	139

Advanced Job Scheduler 143

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless	143
Scheduling jobs with Advanced Job Scheduler . .	143
What's new in Advanced Job Scheduler for V5R4	144
Installing the Advanced Job Scheduler	146
Locate the scheduler	146
Setting up the Advanced Job Scheduler.	146
Assigning the general properties	146
Specifying permission levels	147
Specifying permission levels for functions of the product	148
Specifying permission levels to jobs	148
Specifying default permission levels. . . .	148
Setting up a scheduling calendar	148
Setting up a holiday calendar	149
Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar	150
Setting up a fiscal calendar	150
Specifying a mail server to use for notification	151
Setting up multiple scheduling environments	151
Assigning data libraries to users	152
Managing the Advanced Job Scheduler.	152
Creating and scheduling a job	152
Creating and scheduling a job group	152
Predefined schedules	153
Setting up a predefined schedule	153
Adding a schedule to a scheduled job	153
Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar	154
Creating a temporary scheduled job	154
Scheduling job dependencies	155
The Work Flow Manager	156

Creating a new work flow	157	Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar	180
Starting a work flow	157	Setting up a fiscal calendar	180
Working with work flows	158	Specifying a mail server to use for notification	181
Monitoring job activity for the Advanced Job Scheduler.	158	Setting up multiple scheduling environments	181
Scheduled job activity	158	Assigning data libraries to users	182
Specifying the activity retention	159	Managing the Advanced Job Scheduler.	182
Viewing the scheduled job activity details	159	Creating and scheduling a job	182
Viewing the scheduled job activity for a specific job	159	Creating and scheduling a job group	182
Viewing the activity log details	159	Predefined schedules	183
Viewing the activity log for a specific job	159	Setting up a predefined schedule	183
Monitoring for messages with Advanced Job Scheduler.	160	Adding a schedule to a scheduled job	183
Creating and working with local data area	160	Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar	184
Creating and working with application controls and job controls	160	Creating a temporary scheduled job	184
Working with notification	161	Scheduling job dependencies	185
Specifying a spooled file to attach to an e-mail	162	The Work Flow Manager	186
Working with library lists	162	Creating a new work flow	187
Working with command variables	163	Starting a work flow	187
Working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless	163	Working with work flows	188
Hardware and software requirements	163	Monitoring job activity for the Advanced Job Scheduler.	188
Selecting a device	164	Scheduled job activity	188
Configuring your wireless environment	164	Specifying the activity retention	189
Configuring your Web application server	164	Viewing the scheduled job activity details	189
Configuring your firewall	165	Viewing the scheduled job activity for a specific job	189
Selecting a language	165	Viewing the activity log details	189
Connecting to your i5/OS operating system	165	Viewing the activity log for a specific job	189
Customizing your connection	166	Monitoring for messages with Advanced Job Scheduler.	190
Managing Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless	166	Creating and working with local data area	190
Troubleshooting the Advanced Job Scheduler	167	Creating and working with application controls and job controls	190
		Working with notification	191
		Specifying a spooled file to attach to an e-mail	192
		Working with library lists	192
		Working with command variables	193
		Working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless	193
		Hardware and software requirements	193
		Selecting a device	194
		Configuring your wireless environment	194
		Configuring your Web application server	194
		Configuring your firewall	195
		Selecting a language	195
		Connecting to your i5/OS operating system	195
		Customizing your connection	196
		Managing Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless	196
		Troubleshooting the Advanced Job Scheduler	197
Related information for Management Central	169		
Advanced Job Scheduler	173		
Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless	173		
Scheduling jobs with Advanced Job Scheduler	173		
What's new in Advanced Job Scheduler for V5R4	174		
Installing the Advanced Job Scheduler	176		
Locate the scheduler	176		
Setting up the Advanced Job Scheduler.	176		
Assigning the general properties	176		
Specifying permission levels	177		
Specifying permission levels for functions of the product	178		
Specifying permission levels to jobs	178		
Specifying default permission levels	178		
Setting up a scheduling calendar	178		
Setting up a holiday calendar	179		
Setting up a holiday calendar	179		
		Appendix. Notices	199
		Trademarks	200
		Terms and conditions.	201

Management Central

As a part of iSeries® Navigator, Management Central provides the technology that you need to do systems management tasks across one or more systems simultaneously.

Click Management Central in iSeries Navigator to find easy-to-use systems management functions that come to you as part of your base operating system. Management Central in iSeries Navigator allows you to manage one or more systems through a single central system. Select a system to use as your central system, then add endpoint systems to your Management Central network. You can create groups of similar or related endpoint systems to make managing and monitoring your systems even easier. Your central system will handle the communications for you. You can even take advantage of such options as scheduling and unattended operations. You'll find that Management Central is flexible and easily manipulated to suit your needs.

With iSeries Navigator for Wireless, administrators have even more flexibility in how they access and interact with Management Central. The iSeries Navigator for Wireless overview contains tips on which devices to use, how to install and configure the required elements, and a comprehensive overview of the functions.

What's new for V5R4

This topic highlights changes to the Management Central topic collection for V5R4.

Sharing

When you have a V5R4 GUI and a V5R4 central system, you can share system monitors and system events. You do this in the same way that you share job monitors, message monitors, and file monitors. You specify the sharing level on the **Sharing** tab, which is located on the **Properties** window of the monitor.

System monitor

Exclude heavily utilized communication lines, such as fax lines, from the system monitor graph. For example, when you have two communication line utilization metrics, the average of all of the communication lines is plotted. Thus, if there are one or more lines that you do not want to include in the average, such as a line that is heavily loaded because of fax traffic, you can optionally exclude these lines. For instructions on how to do this, use the online help for System Monitors. (From the **System Monitors Properties** window click **Help**. From the help window click **Help Topics**. From the **Management Central Help Topics** window, click **Contents** → **How To** → **System Monitors** → **Excluding communication lines from a system monitor**.)

System monitor and graph history enhancements

Enhancements have been made to graph history and the system monitor.

Table 1. What's new in Management Central for V5R4

Name	Description
SAVE	You can now save a screen capture of the Graph History or the Systems Monitor window (or just the selected graph) to your local drive. File → Save Window As , File → Save Graph As
PRINT	You can print your graphs from the Graph History or System Monitor window. You can print the entire window, or just the selected graph. File → Print

Table 1. What's new in Management Central for V5R4 (continued)

COORDINATE	The System Monitor has the ability to link all of the displayed graphs together. When this option is selected, all of the graphs that make up the monitor will be coordinated in terms of the time-slice shown, and the scroll position in the graphs. Thereafter, if you scroll to one position in the graph, all of the graphs in the monitor will simultaneously scroll to that same position. View → Coordinate
ORGANIZE	Move the graphs in the System Monitor window into any visual configuration that you want by drag and drop, and resizing the graphs. When you close the Systems Monitor window, the size and positions of the graphs are saved. The next time you open the window, the graphs will display in that configuration.
VISUALIZE	Change the colors of the lines on the graph by using a menu option on the Graph History and System Monitor windows. View → Set Monitor Colors

What's new as of January 2006

“Working with systems with partitions” on page 46

This topic provides information about logical partitions, the authority required to use them and how to schedule resource moves.

“Management Central plug-ins” on page 15

This topic lists the Management Central plug-ins and links to topics with more information about each plug-in.

“Management collection objects” on page 22

This topic explains the management collection object, when it is created, and how the available Collection Services settings affect these objects.

“Special considerations” on page 25

This topic lists important information that you need to keep in mind when working with the different Management Central monitors.

“Selecting the metrics” on page 27



A list of metric definitions for system monitors has been added to this topic.

“Packaging and distribution considerations” on page 50

This topic lists important information that you need to keep in mind when working with the packing function.

How to see what's new or changed

To help you see where technical changes have been made, this information uses:

- The  image to mark where new or changed information begins.
- The  image to mark where new or changed information ends.

To find other information about what's new or changed this release, see the Memo to users.

Printable PDF

Use this to view and print a PDF of this information.

To view or download the PDF version of the Management Central topic collection, select **Management Central** (about 2180 KB).

You can also view or download a PDF version of specific sections of the Management Central topic collection:

- Getting started with Management Central (about 290 KB)
- Working with Management Central monitors (about 420 KB)

- Advanced job scheduler (about 390 KB)

You can view or download these related topics:


- Performance (about 1950 KB)
- Maintaining and managing i5/OS® and related software (about 990 KB)

Saving PDF files

To save a PDF on your workstation for viewing or printing:

1. Right-click the PDF in your browser (right-click the link above).
2. Click the option that saves the PDF locally.
3. Navigate to the directory in which you want to save the PDF.
4. Click **Save**.

Downloading Adobe Reader

- You need Adobe Reader installed on your system to view or print these PDFs. You can download a free copy from the Adobe Web site (www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep.html) .

Getting started with Management Central

To make the Management Central work more effectively, set up your central system and endpoint systems in a way that makes sense for your business environment. When you have finished these preliminary steps, you are ready to start working with Management Central.

About this task

To view or download a PDF version of this topic, select **Getting started with Management Central** (about 290 KB).

Related information

Installing iSeries Navigator

Before you begin

To make sure that you complete a smooth installation and a successful connection to Management Central, it is suggested that you follow these instructions before you start the installation process.

Related information

 [iSeries Navigator Service & Support](#)

[Setting the time zone before upgrading](#)

[Experience Report: Configuring Management Central Connections for Firewall Environments](#)

[TCP/IP setup](#)

[TCP/IP troubleshooter](#)

Configuring TCP prerequisite checklist

To ensure a smooth installation and setup of Management Central, you must make sure that the environment is properly prepared. Use the checklist in this topic to make sure that everything is ready before you begin installing Management Central.

Prerequisite checklist

1. Your System i™ product is current with the latest fixes, service packs for the client, and Java™ PTF group.
2. Read the Frequently Asked Questions at the Navigator service Web site.

3. Use the QTIMZON system value to set the Java time zone for any system that is OS/400® V5R2 or earlier. (This is because in any systems V5R3 or later the QTIMZON system value is used for the Java time zone.)
4. Load all clients with iSeries Navigator and the latest service packs. (The release of the client may be at a higher release than the central system.)
5. Determine the IP address of all of the clients that you will be using. If the client has multiple IP address, it might be necessary to set the IP address to be used so that the central system can connect back to the PC. In such a situation, setting the value for QYPS_HOSTNAME in the MgmtCtrl.properties file will identify the IP address to be used. The following steps can help you decide which IP address will work. To do this use the IPCONFIG command from a DOS prompt. Write the addresses down for future reference.
 - a. Confirm a valid connection from the PC to the central system. Use the ping command (ping xx.xx.xx.xx, where x=the IP address of the central system) on the PC.
 - b. Run IPCONFIG from the command prompt on the PC and record all of the IP Addresses.
 - c. From the central system, ping each IP Address.
 - d. For the first IP address that works, create the file C:\MgmtCtrl.properties file and add this line:
QYPS_HOSTNAME==<ip address on which you performed the ping>.
6. If you are upgrading iSeries Navigator from a previous release, close all open iSeries Navigator windows that might be open and exit iSeries Navigator. Start iSeries Navigator and try to connect to the central system.

Related information

Setting the time zone before upgrading

Setting the time zone (QTIMZON) system value

Management Central connection considerations

Understanding how Management Central establishes a connection is an important contributing factor toward a successful installation and setup. Whether your system configuration is complex or simple there are many considerations that affect a successful connection.

How Management Central establishes a connection

When the Management Central Java server (QYPSJSVR) starts it obtains the IP address for itself, by long name (system + domain name), from TCP/IP. Typically, the clients that appear under My Connections and the Management Central endpoints are defined by the system name or short name.

The iSeries Navigator lookup frequency default is *Always*. This setting causes a system that is listed under My Connections to use the DNS or the TCP/IP host table (Configure TCP/IP (CFGTCP) option 10) to determine the IP address so that it can connect to the central system. The Host Name Search Priority (Configure TCP/IP (CFGTCP) option 12) option controls how the DNS search is done. If it is *LOCAL, it will search the TCP/IP host table first. If it does not find it there, it will use the DNS. If it is *REMOTE, then the DNS is searched first, followed by the TCP/IP host table.

Connection timeout delay

When the Management Central systems on an endpoint are not running, a connection failure happens right away. However, if the system is down or if a bad IP address is being used, the connection cannot be made and there will be a several minute timeout delay before the connection failure is posted.

Connection tests

Management Central uses the IP address of the system located under My Connection to connect to the Central System. When Management Central performs a connection test it does a ping on the PC of the name that is being used for the Central System (typically short name) and then it returns the same IP

address as a Ping on the Central System by the long name. If this is not successful, then the client cannot connect with the Java server. You can resolve this by overriding the Central System's IP address.

To override the IP address on the Central System use the following character-based command:

```
CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(XXXX 'y.y.y.y')
```

Where XXXX is the setting QYPSHOSTNAME and y.y.y.y is the value of the IP address to be used.

Important: Edit the file using the character-based interface. Do not use a mapped drive, or other method.

Lookup frequency

The system environment variable QYPS_DNS sets the Management Central lookup frequency (values 0 = Never, 1 = Always). You can set the QYPS_DNS system variable by using one of these methods:

- Management Central properties window
- The Connection tab on the client
- Use the character-based interface to add an environment variable

```
CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(XXXX 'y')
```

Where QYPS_DNS is the setting and y is the value 0 or 1.

It is recommended that the lookup frequency is set to Always. When the lookup frequency is set to Always, the IP address in the properties of the endpoint is ignored and a request for the IP address via the DNS or the Host Table on the central system is made. As a result, if IP addresses are changed or if the DNS or host table is changed, the new IP address is automatically picked up by Management Central.

When the lookup frequency is set to Never, the IP address that is contained in the properties of the endpoint object is used. As a result, it is possible that a client can successfully connect to the central system which uses the IP address that is determined by the My-Connection, but then have a task run to the central system and have a connection failure. Such an event indicates that the Management Central lookup frequency is set to Never and that the IP address in the endpoint for the central system is incorrect. To resolve this situation, edit the IP address for the endpoint on the endpoint properties window.

Note: The Management Central lookup frequency is a different setting than the lookup frequency setting for a system under My Connections.

Connecting to a Java server

When a client connects to a Java server, the Java server uses an authentication procedure that connects back to the PC. Therefore, the central system must be able to ping the PC.

A common connection problem occurs when the PC's address is one that is reserved for private networks (such as when an individual uses VPN from home to gain access to their network behind their router). For example, assume the PC's address is 10.100.46.143 and the IP address of the central system is 164.143.28.82. A connection failure occurs because addresses that start with 10 are not forwarded by routers. In such a situation, you need to find out what the external IP address of the PC is and then set up a client C:\MgmtCtrl.properties file, and then add the line QYPS_HOSTNAME=xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (where the xxx's are the external IP address of the PC). This causes the Java server use the IP address specified in the properties file to connect to the PC.

Management Central bulk data transfer considerations

A *bulk transfer* is a function that is used in Management Central to transfer data from a source system to a target system (such sending of a package, sending PTFs, and so on). For a successful transfer, the target

system needs to be able to connect back to the source system. The IP address that is used on the target system is determined by the lookup frequency on the target system. If the lookup frequency is Never then the IP address that is used is the one that is provided by the central system for the source system. If the lookup frequency on the target system is set to Always then it will use DNS or the host table to determine the IP address of the source system.

Running Management Central tasks from My Connections

Some of the iSeries Navigator functions use Management Central to obtain information. For example, you can view PTFs that are in Inventory by using **My Connections** → **Configuration and Service**. If Management Central cannot connect to the central system then the function that you are trying to access will experience a several minute time out delay. This results in a connection failure message. A good practice to follow is to expand Management Central before you attempt to run any Management Central functions that are located under My Connections. By doing so, you will make sure that you can connect to the central system.

To run a Management Central task on a system in My Connections, the system must also be defined as an endpoint under Management Central. To define a system as an endpoint expand **Management Central** → **Right-click Endpoint Systems** → **New Endpoint Systems**.

Installing Management Central

After you have completed all of the prerequisite tasks, you are ready to install Management Central. This topic series covers the installation steps as well as how the connection function works. If you fail to connect successfully after you have installed Management Central, see the information about troubleshooting Management Central connections.


Why the highest release of Management Central is required

Each new release of Management Central contains updated functions, features and fixes that give Management Central the ability to manage a system that has machines that are running different versions of i5/OS. In order to use these new features, you must have the most current release of Management Central, and the Management Central dependencies.

Checking for the most current MC code

You must have the most current Management Central server code, Management Central client code, and Management Central dependencies before you can successfully use Management Central.


Checking the Management Central systems for the most current code

The IBM® Software technical document, Recommended PTFs for Management Central Supported Releases  (document number 360059564), provides a summary of the recommended fixes by release.

To access this page from the IBM Web page (www.ibm.com) follow this navigation path.

1. From the menu bar click **Products**.
2. From the Products page, under Systems & Servers, click **System i (iSeries)**.
3. From the System i page, on the navigation bar that is located on the left side, click **Support**.
4. From the Support for IBM System i page, on the navigation bar that is located on the left side, click **Support search**.
5. From the IBM System i5™ Support search page, in the **Search for** field, type the document number and click **Search**.

Checking the Management Central client for the most current code

The iSeries Access  page provides up-to-date information about the service packs (fixes) for iSeries Access for Windows®. To access this page from the IBM web page (www.ibm.com) follow this navigation path.

1. From the menu bar click **Products**.
2. From the Products page, under System & Servers, click **System i (iSeries)**.
3. From the System i page, on the navigation bar that is located on the left side, click **Software**.
4. From the System i software page, click **System i software from A to Z**.
5. Under A, click **iSeries Access**.
6. On the iSeries Access page, on the navigation bar that is located on the left side, click **Service Packs (Fixes)**.

Related tasks

“Changing the central system setup” on page 15

You can select a different system as your central system at any time. The central system must be a system to which you are directly connected. For the latest iSeries Navigator functions, your central system should be running i5/OS Version 5, Release 4 (V5R4).

Installing and accessing Management Central

Some of the systems management functions that you can use are optionally installable components of iSeries Navigator, the graphical user interface (GUI) for the System i product.

About this task

- | When you choose the Typical option on the install wizard, the following Management Central functions are installed:
- | • Tasks (inventory only)
- | • Endpoint systems
- | • System groups

If you did not install all of the components that you need when you installed iSeries Navigator, complete the steps:

1. From the menu bar in iSeries Navigator, select **File** → **Install Options** → **Selective Setup**.
2. Use the Selective Setup wizard to install the additional components that you need for systems management functions. To get all the systems management functions, select Configuration and Service, Users and Groups, Commands, Packages and Products, and Monitors.

When you use the Selective Setup wizard, the components you select will be installed. Any components you deselect during the selective setup will be uninstalled. Be careful not to accidentally uninstall anything while you use the Selective Setup wizard.

Results

When iSeries Navigator has been installed, double-click the desktop icon to start iSeries Navigator. You are now ready to set up your central system.

Related information

Connecting to System i: iSeries Navigator

Installing iSeries Access for Windows on the PC

Verifying the connection function

The Verify Connection function that is located under Management Central is different from the function that is located under My Connection. This topic discusses the purpose of each function and how they differ from each other.

Verifying Connection from My Connection

My Connections → **Right-click a system** → **Diagnostics** → **Verify Connection**

This Verify Connection function pings the different host servers to see if they are up and running correctly and can be reached from the PC. Since it is restricted to single system Navigator functions, it is one of the first things you should rule out when you are troubleshooting a Management Central connection failure. (Many Management Central functions build on the single system functions.) After you have confirmed that the connection to the endpoint systems, under My Connections is successful, then you can proceed to verify the connection from Management Central.

Verifying Connection from Management Central

Right-click Management Central → **Verify Connection**

The Verify Connection function from the Management Central container is a diagnostic tool that checks the most common factors that can cause a failed connection. It then displays the status of these tests. If it reports any failures, you can obtain specific information about the failure as well as recovery information by clicking **Details**. The following is a list of what Management Central verifies.

- The Java setup is correct on the Central System (This includes verifying that certain .jar files are present, and that certain integrated file system file and folder authorities have not been changed)
- The required files that were shipped with the operating system have not been deleted from the Central System, are not damaged, and are being journaled
- The TCP/IP configuration on the Central System is valid (This includes verifying that the host name of both the Central System and the PC are in the host tables or in the DNS as appropriate)
- That a simple Navigator connection can be made to the Central System
- The VRM, host name, the IP address of the Central system, and the VRM of iSeries Navigator
- That the ports that Management Central uses are not in use by another application on the central system
- That on the central system, the user profiles that are needed to run Management Central have not been deleted, or disabled and that they have valid, unexpired passwords.
- That if SSL is being used on the central system, it is configured correctly and that both the PC and central system are using SSL.
- That the central system isn't marked as a "secondary system" in an Management Central High Availability environment (Secondary systems cannot be used as central systems.)
- That the Management Central servers are up and running on the central system
- It reports what types of authentication are supported on the central system

Note:

iSeries Navigator uses the Java toolbox code on the client side (PC) to start the Management Central Verify Connection function. If the toolbox code is not working correctly then the Verify Connection function will not start. If the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) or the toolbox code on the server side is not working correctly, the Verify Connection function will work until the last few checks. The JVM must start before these last few checks can be performed.

Related information

IBM Toolbox for Java

Setting up the central system

To manage multiple systems from a single system, you need to have a central system. After you have installed Management Central and connected successfully, you are ready to set up the central system.

The systems in your network are called *endpoint systems*. You select one of these endpoint systems as your central system. After you add endpoint systems to your network and select your central system, you only need to do your system administration tasks once. Your central system will initiate your tasks and store the necessary systems management data. You choose your central system when you first start iSeries Navigator. You can also easily change your central system at any time.

Important: The release of the Central System must be the highest release in the network.

Setting up your central system for the first time

This information outlines the requirements for configuring the central system for the first time.

About this task

To start using iSeries Navigator, double-click the desktop icon and select a system to connect to and define a System i connection. The first system you specify is assigned as your central system. Management Central appears automatically at the top of the list in the left pane of your iSeries Navigator window. The Management Central server is automatically started on the central system.

To access the distributed systems management functions of iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central**.

| For systems running i5/OS V5R3 and later, the Management Central databases are located in libraries QMGTC and QMGTC2. For systems running releases earlier than i5/OS V5R3, the Management Central databases are located in the QUSRSYS library.

| To complete an initialization, the Management Central sever requires that QSECOFR is enabled and active. If you use a different profile name with the same kind of authorization as QSECOFR, you need to run the following command on the central system.

```
| CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID 'XXXXX')
```

| (xxxxx is a user ID other than the default of QSECOFR)

| In some cases, the central system might have multiple IP addresses by which it can be accessed (CFGTCP option 10). You can use a ping command on the central system to display the IP address that will be returned to Management Central. If this is not the IP address that the clients use to connect to the system, you can override the default IP address with the address that the ping command displayed. You can use the following command to override the default IP address.

```
| CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(QYPS_HOSTNAME 'w.x.y.z')
```

| (w.x.y.z is the IP address that Management Central should use for connection purposes)

If your central system is running OS/400 V5R2 or later (or V5R1 with PTF SI06917), you can right-click **Management Central** and select **Verify Connection** to verify that the central system connection is configured properly. To see detailed information about any Failed message, select the message and click **Details** (or double-click the message).

| **Note:** The Verify Connection function only confirms that Management Central is working properly on the central system. TCP/IP configuration and firewalls also might prevent the Management Central client from successfully connecting to the central system.

Results

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Related information

Experience Report: Configuring Management Central Connections for Firewall Environments

TCP/IP troubleshooter

TCP/IP setup

Scenarios

Management Central settings and options

If you are migrating from a release that is earlier than V5R3, you should note that the system environment variables were moved. This topic explains where you can find the client and server environment variables for systems running a release of V5R3 or later.

/QIBM/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McCSConfig.properties

QYPS_EARLIEST_RELEASE
QYPS_MAXPTF_SIZE
QYPS_FTP_DISCOVERY
QYPS_DISCOVERY_TIMEOUT
QYPS_DISC_LCLSUBNET
QYPS_SNMP_DISCOVERY
QYPS_IP_DISCOVERY
QYPS_DISCOVERY_STARTUP
QYPS_MAX_SOCKETS
QYPS_MAX_CONTIMOUT
QYPS_RETRY_TIMEOUT
QYPS_RETRY_INTERVAL
QYPS_AUTORETRY
QYPS_SOCKETTIMEOUT
QYPS_COLLECTPTF_IFCHANGED
QYPS_DNS
QYIV_QUERY_MAX_SIZE
QYPSJ_SAVF_RECORDS
QYPSJ_TOOLBOX_TRACE
QYPS_LOCATION
QYPS_LOCATION2
QYPSJ_CONNECT_INTERVAL

/Qibm/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McCSSecure.properties

(SSL setup)

QYPS_AUTH_LEVEL
QYPS_SSL

/Qibm/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McEPConfig.properties

QYPS_TRACE
QYPSJ_TRACE
QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID
QYPS_MAX_TRANSFERS

QYPS_HOSTNAME
 QYPS_MINIMUM_PORT
 QYPS_MAXIMUM_PORT

/Qibm/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McEPSecure.properties

QYPS_USER_PASSWORD
 QYPS_BASIC_AUTH
 QYPS_TRUST_LEVEL
 QYPS_KERBEROS_PRINCIPAL
 QYPS_KERBEROS_CONFIG
 QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID
 QYPS_ID_MAPPING_ONLY
 QYPS_USE_ID_MAPPING

Settings

iSeries Navigator allows you to manage multiple systems from a single system in a TCP/IP network environment. Some aspects of your TCP/IP environment may require changes to your Management Central server configuration. For example, if you are using a firewall or if you want to use SSL encryption for Management Central server communications, you might need to change some of your Management Central server settings.

Table 2. Management Central settings set via iSeries Navigator

Name	Description	Values	iSeries Navigator Field Name(Right-click Management Central → Properties → Connection tab)
QYPS_AUTORETRY	Specifies whether to automatically restart monitors on failed systems.	0=No, 1=Yes	Automatically restart monitors on failed systems
QYPS_COLLECTPTF_IFCHANGED	Update fixes inventory only if changes have occurred	0 = NO, 1 = YES; 0 is the default	When collecting inventory, only update when changes have occurred
QYPS_DNS	IP address lookup frequency	0 = Never, 1 = Always,	IP address lookup frequency
QYPS_MAX_CONTIMOUT	Maximum time (in seconds) to wait for a connection to a system to be established	1 to 3600 (The default value is 180 seconds.)	While connected to endpoint systems
QYPS_MAX_SOCKETS	Maximum number of sockets that can be created on a system	200 (This is the default value.)	Maximum connections
QYPS_MAXPTF_SIZE	Maximum data transfer size	-1 = No maximum size	Maximum data transfer size (MB)
QYPS_RETRY_INTERVAL	Specifies how often (in minutes) to attempt a monitor restart	5 (This is the default value.)	How often to attempt restart
QYPS_RETRY_TIMEOUT	Specifies how long (in minutes) to attempt a monitor restart	180 (This is the default value.)	How long to attempt restart
QYPS_SOCKETTIMEOUT	Maximum time (in seconds) to wait on a socket to return from a request	30 seconds (This is the default value.)	When connecting to endpoint systems

Table 3. Management Central settings set via character-based interface

Name	Description	Values	Use the character-based interface
QYIV_QUERY_MAX_SIZE	Maximum number of records in the Inventory query	200	
QYPS_HOSTNAME	The host name or IP address that you want the endpoints and the PC to connect to when they need to make a new connection back to the system. Note: If you use a host name, then you are relying on the endpoint or the PC to resolve the host name through their host table or DNS.		

Table 3. Management Central settings set via character-based interface (continued)

Name	Description	Values	Use the character-based interface
QYPS_LOCATION	Library name where the Management Central databases are found	QMGTC	
QYPS_LOCATION2	Second library name where the Management Central databases are found	QMGTC2	
QYPS_ID_MAPPING_ONLY	Indicates whether only the Enterprise Identity Mapping (EIM) should be used for authentication	0=No, 1=Yes	
QYPS_MAXIMUM_PORT	Used by BDT (Bulk Data Transfer) QYPSBDTSVR job . Minimum of range of port number to be used.		
QYPS_MINIMUM_PORT	Used by BDT (Bulk Data Transfer) QYPSBDTSVR job . Minimum of range of port number to be used.	Name of host server	
QYPS_TRACE	C++ server tracing	-1 to turn Off; or 0 to turn On	
QYPS_USE_ID_MAPPING	Java server tracing	-1 to turn Off; or 2 to turn On	
QYPSJ_CONNECT_INTERVAL	How often (in seconds) to do the heartbeat to check connections.	60	
QYPSJ_PORT	Port on which the Java server is listening to for incoming client requests	5544 (This is the default value.)	
QYPSJ_SAVF_RECORDS	Maximum number of records in the Java save file	100	
QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID	User profile with all object authority	User profile which the Java server runs as for certain tasks. This profile must have *SECOFR class authority. QSECOFR is the default, or you can specify the user profile name.	
QYPSJ_TOOLBOX_TRACE	Indicates whether to turn Toolbox trace on	0=Off, 1=On	
QYPSRV_PORT	Port on which the C++ server is listening to for incoming client requests	5555. (This is the default value.)	
QYPSJ_TRACE	Port on which the C__ server is listening to for incoming client requests	Default 5555	

Table 4. Management Central settings set via iSeries Navigator

Name	Description	Values	iSeries Navigator Field Name (Management Central → Right-click Endpoint Systems → Properties)
QYPS_DISC_LCLSUBNET	Discover local subnet	0 = No, 1 = Yes	
QYPS_DISCOVERY_STARTUP	Search every time the Management Central server starts	0 = No, 1 = Yes	
QYPS_DISCOVERY_TIMEOUT	Discovery timeout (in seconds)	15 (This is the default value.)	Timeout (seconds)
QYPS_EARLIEST_RELEASE	Earliest operating system release to search for	V5R4M0, this is the default	Earliest operating system release to search for
QYPS_FTP_DISCOVERY	Run discovery using File Transfer Protocol	0 = No, 1 = Yes	How to verify systems, FTP check box
QYPS_IP_DISCOVERY	Run discovery using Internet Protocol	0 = No, 1 = Yes	
QYPS_SNMP_DISCOVERY	Run discovery using Simple Network Mail Protocol	0 = No, 1 = Yes	How to verify systems, SNMP check box

The following table contains Property file (/Qibm/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McConfig.properties) settings that you might need to change in order to accommodate your system's needs. Unless it is otherwise indicated, use the character-based interface to make these changes.

Table 5. Management Central property file parameters

Parameter	Description	Values	
QYPS_SSL	Turns the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) on or off.	0 = Off, 1 = On	iSeries Navigator Field Name(Right-click Management Central → Properties → Security tab) Field name = Use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)
QYPS_AUTH_LEVEL	SSL authentication level. This value works with the QYPS_SSL.	0 = off (This is the default. It can only connect to a server without SSL), 1 = Sever Authentication on (This means it can connect to server with or without SSL.)	iSeries Navigator (Right-click Management Central → Properties → Security tab) Field name = Authentication level
QYPS_USER_PASSWORD	Require password on endpoint systems	0 = No, 1 = Yes	iSeries Navigator (Right-click Management Central → Properties → Security tab) Field name = Use profile and password authentication
QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID	The user profile with which the Java Server runs as, for certain tasks	QSECOFR (This is the default value.) You can also specify a user profile name, however its profile must have *SECOFR class authority.	

Adding endpoint systems to your Management Central network

An endpoint system is any system or logical partition in your TCP/IP network that you choose to manage through your central system.

About this task

When you add a connection to a system from iSeries Navigator (by clicking **File** → **Connection to Servers** → **Add connection** while your current environment is selected in the left pane), the system is added to the list under your current active environment (typically named My Connections). Alternatively, when you add a new endpoint system, the system name is added to the list of Endpoint Systems under Management Central.

When you perform an action on a system under My Connections, a direct connection from the client (your PC) to the system is required, and actions are performed on one system at a time. In contrast, Management Central allows systems management tasks to be performed on multiple systems (in the Endpoint Systems list) and only one client connection (to the central system) is required.

- | The central system handles the connections to the endpoint systems. The Management Central property
- | setting for the Lookup Frequency controls how the IP address for an endpoint system is determined. If it
- | is set to NEVER then the IP address that is stored in the endpoint object is used. If it is set to ALWAYS,
- | then the TCP/IP, on the system provides the IP address for the system name that is specified.

Note: If you are adding endpoint systems that are running OS/400 V5R1, you must have the following fixes (also known as PTFs) installed on the V5R1 system: SI01375, SI01376, SI01377, SI01378, and SI01838. Without these fixes, you will not be able to use all the systems management functions on the endpoint system.

To add one or more endpoint systems, complete the following steps:

1. Right-click **Endpoint Systems** and select **New Endpoint System**.
2. Enter the name of the system and click **OK**.

Results

The endpoint systems that you added appear automatically under **Endpoint Systems** in your iSeries Navigator window. After you have added an endpoint system, you can view its properties. You can also change the description or the IP address as needed.

Next, you can create system groups to help you manage different sets of endpoint systems. The new system groups will appear under Management Central in iSeries Navigator.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

How to completely remove endpoints

To completely remove an endpoint that is also defined as a My Connection system, all users that have the system defined must remove the My connection system so it will not be automatically added.

When connecting to a target system, Management Central requires and uses endpoint objects. Additionally, many Management Central functions appear under systems that are listed under My Connections. Thus, whenever a user creates a system under My Connections, an endpoint object is saved in the database on the central system as well as the client PC.

If you delete the endpoint from Management Central only the entry in the central system database is deleted. You must also delete the system from all clients that have that system listed under My Connections. Otherwise, the next time user, that still has that system listed under My Connections, starts iSeries Navigator the endpoint will be automatically added again to Management Central

Creating system groups in your Management Central network

A *system group* is a collection of endpoint systems that you define. If you are working with multiple systems or multiple logical partitions, creating a system group allows you to perform tasks on all the systems without selecting each endpoint system. Just select the system group you created and start your task.

About this task

Endpoint systems can belong to several system groups at the same time. After you have created a system group, you can manage the entire group from your central system as if it were a single system.

To create a system group, follow these steps:

1. Open **Management Central** from your **iSeries Navigator** window.
2. Right-click **System Groups** and select **New System Group**.
3. On the **New System Group** window, specify a unique name for the new system group. You can also enter a brief description that will help you later identify this group in a list of system groups.
4. From the **Available systems** list, select the endpoint systems that you want to include in this new group. Click the **Add** button to add the systems to the **Selected systems** list.
5. If you want to give other users the ability to view or change this system group, use sharing. Click the **Sharing** tab and specify **Read-only** or **Full** sharing. If you specify **None**, other users will not be able to view or change this system group unless they have special authority, which is administered under Host Applications in Application Administration. Users with this special authority, called Management Central Administration Access, can view all tasks, definitions, monitors, and system groups under Management Central in the iSeries Navigator window.
6. Click **OK** to create the new system group.

Results

The system group you create will include all the endpoint systems you entered. You may decide later that you want to edit that list of endpoint systems. You can always add more endpoint systems or remove endpoint systems from your system group.

You can delete system groups from Management Central. When you delete a system group or remove endpoint systems from a system group, only the system group is changed. The endpoint systems that

were in the system group are still listed under **Endpoint Systems** in the iSeries Navigator window. If you delete an endpoint system from the **Endpoint Systems** list, that endpoint system is removed from all system groups.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Related information

Management Central and Application Administration

Changing the central system setup

You can select a different system as your central system at any time. The central system must be a system to which you are directly connected. For the latest iSeries Navigator functions, your central system should be running i5/OS Version 5, Release 4 (V5R4).

Before you begin

If your PC is running V5R2 or V5R3 iSeries Navigator, and you want to select a central system that is running OS/400 V5R1, you must have the following fixes (also known as PTFs) installed on the V5R1 system: SI01375, SI01376, SI01377, SI01378, and SI01838. Without these fixes, you will not be able to connect to the V5R1 system as a central system.

About this task

To change your central system, follow these steps:

1. Right-click Management Central and select **Change Central System**.
2. Use the **Change Central System** window to choose a system from your list of connected systems.
3. If the system you want to use as your central system is not currently connected to your iSeries Navigator network, right-click your active environment (typically "My Connections") and choose **Connection to Servers** → **Add connection**. When the new system is connected, you can change your central system to the new system.

Results

After you have added endpoint systems and created system groups, those endpoint systems and system groups will appear under Management Central as well. Once you have set up your central system, you are ready to do the other tasks necessary for setting up Management Central.

| **Important:** The central system that you use should be equal to or at a later release than the releases of
| the endpoints that are being used.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

| **Management Central plug-ins**

| A plug-in is a separately installable component of iSeries Navigator. A plug-in adds folders and objects to
| the hierarchy tree, choices to iSeries Navigator menus, and property pages to the property sheet for a
| folder or object. There are several Management Central plug-ins that you can use to manage your system.

| **Backup, Recovery, and Media Services (BRMS)**

| IBM Backup, Recovery, and Media Services (BRMS) helps you implement a disciplined approach to
| managing your backups and provides you with an orderly way to retrieve lost or damaged data.

BRMS is the IBM strategic solution for planning and managing save and restore operations on your System i product. BRMS base product provides all of the functions that most System i users need to implement a fully automated, single system, backup, recovery, and media management strategy. Using BRMS, you can manage your most critical and complex save operations, including online backups of Lotus® servers. It also supports parallel save operations of a library or single object using up to 32 tape devices, which shortens the save window by using multiple devices. You can also recover your system fully during a disaster or failure, or restore single objects or libraries from your save media. BRMS can also perform some daily maintenance activities that are related to your backup routine.

In addition to these backup and recovery features, BRMS can support and manage an unlimited number of media, shared tape devices, automated tape libraries, virtual tape devices, and IBM Tivoli® Storage Manager servers. BRMS enables you to track all of your media from creation to expiration. You no longer have to keep track of which items are on which volumes, and worry that you will accidentally write over active data.

As your business needs change and grow, you can add functions to the BRMS base product by purchasing and installing additional options. The Network feature of the BRMS product provides centralized management of multiple BRMS systems within a network using local TCP/IP, Advanced Peer-to-Peer Network (APPN), or both. A BRMS network system shares the inventory and policies associated with media managed within BRMS network group. In addition, users can view the save history of any system in the network from a single system. The networking feature also simplifies media duplication by using one system in the network to duplicate media for another system in the network. The systems in a BRMS network can be other System i platforms or individual i5/OS partitions.

The Advanced feature of the BRMS product enables Hierarchical Storage Manager (HSM) archive with HSM dynamic retrieval and automated disk pool data migration. Parallel save operations work with the BRMS Advanced feature to allow for parallel archive and parallel dynamic retrieval of a single object. The ability to dynamically retrieve a large database file in parallel helps to reduce the window of the retrieval process. The BRMS Advanced feature allows archive capabilities of database files, stream files, and documents based on frequency of use, inactivity limit, object size, or disk pool thresholds.

BRMS provides both the traditional character-based interface and a graphical user interface (GUI), which is available as a plug-in to iSeries Navigator. These interfaces are not mutually exclusive. You can either choose both interfaces, using the character-based interface for some tasks and the BRMS plug-in for others, or you can choose to use one interface exclusively. However, differences between these BRMS interfaces do exist and you should be aware of them.

Important: BRMS is not a replacement for a backup, recovery, and media management strategy; it is a tool that you use to implement your strategy. Before you start doing backups using BRMS or any other product, you should plan your backup and recovery strategy.

Related information

Advantages of using BRMS

Setting up BRMS

Clusters

Clusters let you efficiently group your System i products together to set up an environment that provides availability that approaches 100 percent for your critical applications, devices, and data.

Clusters also provide simplified systems management and increased scalability to seamlessly add new components as your business grows.

By using the code examples, you agree to the terms of the Code license and disclaimer information.

Related information

Cluster concepts

Managing clusters

| **Working with systems with partitions**

| The Systems with Partitions container that is located under Management Central lets you manage the logical partitions of all of the servers on the system from the central system.

| With logical partitioning (LPAR), you can address multiple system requirements in a single system to achieve system consolidation, business unit consolidation, and mixed production or test environments. By itself, LPAR does not provide a significant availability increase. It can, however, be used to complement other availability strategies. Since each partition is treated as a separate system, you can run a single environment on a single system image. This can provide for a more cost efficient solution.

| **Authority requirements**

| Access to logical partition information in iSeries Navigator, Dedicated Service Tools (DST), and System Service Tools (SST) requires either operations or administration authority to the logical partition function. In addition, you need remote panel authorization if you want to use the Operations Console remote panel for secondary partitions from your PC.

| Logical partitions can be created using iSeries Navigator. In order to access logical partition functions, you must first configure the service tools server. Service tools are used to configure, manage, and service your IBM iSeries model 270 or 8xx or logical partitions. If you want to manage logical partitions on servers other than model 8xx, you must use the Hardware Management Console (HMC). You will need to use a service tools user ID with LPAR administrator authority.

| **Related information**

| Partitioning with an iSeries Server

| **Advanced Job Scheduler**

| The Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program (5722-JS1) is a powerful scheduler that allows unattended job processing 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. This scheduling tool provides more calendar features and offers greater control over scheduled events than the Management Central scheduler. You can also view job completion history and manage notification of a job's status.

| If you want to schedule jobs on several systems in your network, the product must be installed on each of your systems. If you want to use the Advanced Job Scheduler in iSeries Navigator (and in Management Central), then you must install the client plugin from a system that has the Advanced Job Scheduler installed.

| However, it is not necessary to install the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program on each endpoint system in your Management Central network. When you install the Advanced Job Scheduler on the central system, jobs or tasks that you define on an endpoint system will gather job information that is needed from the central system. You must set up all job definition information on the central system.

| If systems in your network have the Advanced Job Scheduler installed locally, you can schedule tasks outside of the Management Central network. Under **My Connections** in iSeries Navigator, you have access to the Advanced Job Scheduler on that local system when you expand **Work Management**.

| **Note:** For ordering information, see the Job Scheduler for i5/OS  web site.

| **Related tasks**

| "Scheduling jobs with Advanced Job Scheduler" on page 58

| Follow these instructions to manage the Advanced Job Scheduler. You first need to install the licensed program, and then complete the tasks to customize the Advanced Job Scheduler. Finally, the remainder of the tasks allow you to work with and manage this scheduler.

Troubleshooting Management Central connections

Several factors can prevent a connection to the Management Central server. You can take these steps to troubleshoot a failed connection.

About this task

First and foremost, make sure that the central system is running on the highest operating system release in the network. Problems can occur because there are clients in the network that are running an operating system that is at a higher release than the central system.

Failed connection to the central system

1. From the PC, verify that you can ping your central system using the name or IP address listed in iSeries Navigator as your central system. If this is unsuccessful then there is something wrong with either your network, or your DNS or host table. You must fix this before you can connect.
2. From the central system, make sure that you can ping your PC using the IP address of your PC. If this is unsuccessful, you will not be able to use some of the Management Central functions. For more information, see the Information Center experience report, "Configuring Management Central Connections for Firewall Environments".
3. Verify the central system connection. (From iSeries Navigator expand **My Connections** → **Right-click the system that is your central system** → **Verify Connections**.) If this reports any errors, click **Details**. This opens a window that displays information about what happened.
4. Use the Verify Connection function that is located under Management Central to further trouble shoot the problem. (From iSeries Navigator right-click **Management Central** → **Verify Connection**.) If this reports any errors, click **Details**. This opens a window that displays information about what happened.

What to do if you still cannot connect

If you still cannot connect use the following procedure to further troubleshoot the problem:

1. Verify that the Management Central server QYPSJSVR is running on the Central System.
 - a. From iSeries Navigator, expand **My Connections** → **system (that you are using as the central system)** → **Network** → **Servers** → **TCP/IP**.
 - b. Look at the Management Central item to see if the server is started. If necessary, right-click Management Central under TCP/IP, and click **Start**.
 - c. If the server still fails to start, view the job logs for possible problems, or continue with the next items to check for some common problems that can cause the servers not to start.
2. Check the TCP/IP configuration on the central system.

It is important that the Central System is able to ping itself using both the fully qualified domain name and the short name. If pinging either of these names fails, you will need to add the name and IP address to either the system's host table or DNS. Make sure that the IP address used in these pings is one that the PC can contact.
3. If you are using SSL with Management Central, verify that it is set up correctly. Make sure to configure your Central System, all your endpoint systems, as well as iSeries Navigator on your PC.
4. Check the QSECOFR profile.
 - a. Management Central requires a profile with *ALLOBJ and *SECOFR authority enabled, and a valid password must be set so that it does not expire.

Important: You must make this change via the character-based interface, otherwise the system might not be able to read the file.

By default, Management Central uses the QSECOFR profile. Thus if this default has not been changed, then you can enable QSECOFR and set the password to never expire. (If you choose not to set the password to never expire then you must be diligent about keeping the password active.

This is done by always changing the current password **before** it expires.) If you are using a customized profile other than QSECOFR then enable it and set the password to never expire. To change QSECOFR, open the properties file: "/QIBM/UserData/OS400/MGTC/config/McConfig.properties". Change the parameter "QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID = QSECOFR" to "QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID = YOURPROFILE" (where YOURPROFILE is the profile name replacing QSECOFR).

b. Or you can run

```
CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(xxxx 'yyyy')
```

where xxxx is QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID and yyyy is the name of the profile to be used.

5. If both of the Management Central servers on the central system are started successfully and you have done the above troubleshooting, but you still cannot connect from iSeries Navigator, then most likely the problem is either TCP/IP configuration related, or firewall related. In either case, use the Configuring Management Central Connections for Firewall Environments experience report to troubleshoot this problem. A few important notes are listed below:
- The Central System needs to be able to initiate a connection with iSeries Navigator on the PC, so it is important that the Central System can ping the IP address of the PC.
 - The PC needs to be able to initiate a connection with iSeries Navigator that is using the following IPs:
 - The name or IP being used as the central system name in iSeries Navigator (the name of the system under my connections).
 - The IP address that the central system gets when it pings itself.

Note: The initial connection to the central system uses the name or IP specified in iSeries Navigator for the central system. However during this initial connection, the central system discovers its own IP address and sends that IP to the PC. The PC uses that IP address for all further communications. The ports that Management Central uses need to be open in any firewalls that are being used.

Failed connection from PC to the central system

1. Right-click Management Central and run Verify Connection.
2. Make sure that the single socket layer (SSL) for the Management Central servers is turned on. Look in /qibm/userdata/os400/mgtc/config/McConfig.properties and confirm that QYPS_SSL>1 or QYPS_AUTH_LEVEL>1. If you change these values, remember to restart the Management Central servers.
3. If you are running OS/400 V5R2, did the QYPSSRV job fail to start? If it failed to start then the Digital Certificate Manager (DCM) configuration was not done correctly. Make sure that you have assigned your certificate the Management Central Application identification as well as the host server IDs.
4. Is there a padlock icon next to the central system? If not, then the client is not using SSL to connect. Under My Connections, right-click the central system, go to the Secure Sockets tab, and then choose to use SSL. Then click **OK**. You must close iSeries Navigator and restart it before this value takes affect.
5. On that same Secure Sockets tab as mentioned in step 3, there is a button to Download the CA to your PC. Make sure that you have done this, using the operating system that you CREATED the CA on (not necessarily the central system).
6. On the same Secure Sockets tab mentioned in the above bullet, there is a Verify SSL Connection. Run this and look at the results.
7. If you are running OS/400 V5R2 verify that the file QIBM\ProdData\OS400\Java400\jdk\lib\security\java.security has the following properties defined as these can cause a connection problem.
 - os400.jdk13.jst.factories=true
 - ssl.SocketFactory.provider=com.sun.net.ssl.internal.ssl.SSLSocketFactoryImpl

8. If you are running OS/400 V5R2 on the client, on your PC, look at c:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Documents\ibm\client access\classes\com\ibm\as400\access\KeyRing.class. Is it size 0? If so, delete the file and download the Certificate Authority.

Failed connection from central system to endpoint

In addition to following the steps for troubleshooting a failed connection from the PC to the central system, you should also view the job log on the central system. It should give a reason for why the connection was rejected. (For example: (CPFB918) Connection to system mysystem.mydomain.com rejected. Authentication level 0. Reason Code 99. This means that the SSL is not active for the endpoint. Instead, it is at authentication level 0.) You can find the meanings for negative reason codes in /QSYS.LIB/QSYSINC.LIB/H.FILE/SSL.MBR.

Note: Endpoint systems do not require a padlock.

Additional considerations

Firewall considerations

All communication is TCP initiated from the PC to the central system. You can specify the exact port to use by adding the following line to the C:\MgmtCtrl.properties file:

```
QYPSJ_LOCAL_PORT=xxxx
```

where *xxxx* is the port number. The port number should be greater than 1024 and less than 65535. Additionally, the port number must not be used by another application on the PC. The port must be open through the firewall. Should the firewall require it, all sockets must be open.

Related information

Scenario: Secure all connections to your Management Central server with SSL

Experience Report: Configuring Management Central Connections for Firewall Environments

Digital Certificate Manager

Working with Management Central monitors

Management Central monitors can be used to check your system performance, your jobs and servers, your message queues, and changes to selected files.

You can specify thresholds for various metrics on these monitors, and then specify actions to be taken whenever a monitor detects that a threshold has been triggered. For example, you can run an i5/OS command or start a program when the threshold is triggered. For specific examples that describe how you can use these monitors, see the related concept Scenarios: Performance.

You can use a *system monitor* to see detailed graphs that monitor the real-time performance of multiple i5/OS operating system. In the Graph History window, you can see a graphical view of the metrics that have been collected for an extended period of time by Collection Services. You can contrast this data with the real-time data for the last hour shown in a System Monitor window.

You can monitor your jobs and servers with a *job monitor*. For example, you might want to monitor a job's CPU usage, job status, or job log messages. For each of those metrics, you can specify a threshold and actions to take when that threshold is triggered. For example, you could set up your monitor to send a message to the system operator whenever the CPU usage exceeds a certain threshold. In addition to the i5/OS commands, you can use the Advanced Job Scheduler Send Distribution using JS (SNDDSTJS) command to notify someone by e-mail when the threshold is exceeded, if the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program 5722-JS1 is installed on the endpoint system.

You can create a *message monitor* to take action on a list of messages that are important to you. For example, when the message monitor detects CPI0953 (threshold of a disk pool is exceeded), you could specify to run a command that deletes objects that you no longer need from the disk pool.

You can use a *file monitor* to monitor for a specified text string or for a specified size. Or, you can monitor for any modification to one or more selected files. You can select one or more files to be monitored, or you can select the History log option, which will monitor the i5/OS history log (QHST).

| **Note:** Integrated file system treats QSYS physical files as directories, with the physical file members
| actually treated as files.

You can use a *B2B activity monitor* to view a graph of active transactions over time, and you can run commands automatically when thresholds are triggered. You can search for and display a specific transaction as well as view a bar graph of the detailed steps of that specific transaction.

You can start any Management Central monitor, and then turn to other tasks on your server, in iSeries Navigator, or on your PC. You can choose to be informed by an audible or visible alarm on your PC when important thresholds are reached. The monitor will continue to run and perform any threshold commands or actions you specified. Your monitor will run until you decide to stop it. You can view all your monitors, as well as all your Management Central tasks, remotely with iSeries Navigator for Wireless.

In the Management Central properties, you can specify whether you want the central system to automatically attempt to restart your monitors on endpoint systems where they failed to start. If you select to have the system automatically attempt to restart your monitors, you may also specify how long you want the central system to keep trying to restart the monitors and how often you want the system to try during that time period. For example, if you want the system to try to restart monitors every five minutes for a period of 3 hours, you can select **Automatically restart monitors on failed systems**, and then specify 180 minutes for **How long to attempt restart** and 5 minutes for **How often to attempt restart**.

The steps to create and run a monitor are basically the same for whichever type of monitor you choose to run.

To view or download a PDF version of this topic, select **Working with Management Central monitors** (about 194 KB)

Monitor concepts

Monitors can display real-time performance data. Additionally, they can continually monitor your system in order to run a selected command when a specified threshold is reached. Find out how monitors work, what they can monitor, and how they can respond to a given performance situation.

The system monitors display the data stored in the collection objects that are generated and maintained by Collection Services. The system monitors display data as it is collected, for up to one hour. To view longer periods of data, you should use Graph history. You can change the frequency of the data collection in the monitor properties. The settings in the monitor properties override the settings in Collection Services.

You can use monitors to track and research many different elements of system performance and can have many different monitors running simultaneously. When used together, the monitors provide a sophisticated tool for observing and managing system performance. For example, when implementing a new interactive application, you might use a system monitor to prioritize a job's resource utilization, a job monitor to watch for and handle any problematic jobs, and a message monitor to alert you if a specified message occurs on any of your systems.

Setting thresholds and actions

When you create a new monitor, you can specify actions you want to occur when the system metric reaches a specified threshold level, or an event occurs. When threshold levels or events occur, you can choose to run an i5/OS command on the endpoint systems, such as sending a message or holding a job queue. Additionally, you may choose to have the monitor carry out several predefined actions such as updating the event log and alerting you by either sounding an alarm on your PC or starting the monitor. Finally, you can automatically reset the monitor by specifying a second threshold level, which causes the monitor to resume normal activity when it is reached.

Management collection objects

Collection Services stores data for each collection in a single collection object from which you can create as many different sets of database files as you need. This introductory topic explains the management collection object, when it is created, and how the available Collection Services settings affect these objects.

A *management collection object* (also known as *MGTCOL) serves as an efficient storage medium to hold large quantities of performance data. Once you have configured and started Collection Services, performance data is continuously collected and stored in these objects. Then, when you need to work with performance data you can use the data that is stored in these objects to populate performance database files.

Each *MGTCOL object has one of these attributes:

*PFR (detailed data)

*MGTCOL objects that have the *PFR attribute can become quite large. Their size depends on the number of active jobs in the system, performance metrics being collected, and the collection interval. Data in this type of object support the Performance Management for System i5 performance metrics and reflect all of the requested system performance data. The **Location to store collections** field that is located on the Collection Services Properties window displays the library in which the *PFR objects are located. The job QYSPFRCOL collects and stores this data in this object.

The collection is cycled (a new *PFR object is created) at least once in a 24 hour period and the QYSPFRCOL job writes the performance data into the new object. You can schedule this to happen more frequently.

When Performance Management for System i5 is running, the *PFR objects are placed in the QMPGDATA library. If you are not using Performance Management for System i5, then the *PFR objects are placed in the QPFRDATA library. These are default settings.

Note: If you use the Create Database Files Now option you can specify a different library, however this does not change the default setting. All subsequent files will be written to the QMPGDATA (or the QPFRDATA) library.

*PFRDTL (graph data)

Graph history and system monitors use *MGTCOL objects that have the *PFRDTL attribute. These objects are stored in the QMGTC2 library. The *PFRDTL object supports second and third level detail for the top twenty uses of the metric and the data retains the same interval by which it was collected.

The collection is cycled (a new *PFRDTL object is created) at least once in a 24 hour period and the job QYMEPFRCVT writes the data to a new object. The naming convention for *PFRDTL objects is Q0yyddd00, where yy is the year and ddd is the Julian day of the year. For best results when using the graph history function, you should retain a minimum of seven days of *PFRDTL objects.

*PFRHST (summary data)

Graph history also uses *MGTCOL objects that have the *PFRHST attribute. These objects are stored in the QMGTC2 library. When the collection is cycled, the QYMEARCPMA job adds the data to the existing *PFRHST object. No detail data or properties data is available. You must start Performance Management for System i5 to enable the summary data fields. The default retention period is one month. The summary data is summarized in one-hour intervals and does not support second and third level details.

Setting the retention period

You can set the retention period for these objects from the Collection Services Properties window.

Management Central → **Endpoint Systems** → **system** → **Configuration and Service** → **Right-click Collection Services** → **Properties**

Viewing collection objects

iSeries Navigator

You can use iSeries Navigator to view *MGTCOL objects with the *PFR attribute.

Management Central → **Endpoint Systems** → **system** → **Configuration and Service** → **Collection Services**

You can also use this method.

My Connections → **system** → **Configuration and Service** → **Collection Services**

Each object that is listed under the Collection Name is a different management collection object. You can right-click the object to see its status and data summary.

Character-based interface

The following command can be used to view objects for the *PFRHST and the *PFRDTL type collection objects in the library QMGTC2:

```
WRKOBJPDM LIB(QMGTC2) OBJTYPE(*MGTCOL)
```

Related information

Collection Services

Creating database files from Collection Services data

Managing collection objects

iSeries Navigator monitors

PM iSeries concepts

Job monitors and Collection Services

In order to avoid creating a negative performance impact on your system, you should understand how the different metrics in the job monitor uses Collection Services.

The metrics that are available for a job monitor are:

- Job count
- Job log message
- Job status
- Job numeric values
- Summary numeric values

The data for the job numeric and summary numeric values metrics come from Collection Services. The overhead for obtaining this data is minimal and is not affected by the number of specific jobs that are being monitored. It takes two intervals of Collection services data before the first point or data metric value can be calculated. For example, if the collection interval is 5 minutes it will take more than 5 minutes before the first metric value is known.

The overhead for the job log message and job status metrics is much more costly in terms of the CPU resources required to obtain the information. Additionally, the number of jobs that are being monitored as well as the collection interval, affect the amount of CPU overhead that is required. For example, a job Monitor with a 5 minute interval will have six times the amount of overhead process to complete versus if the collection interval was set to 30 minutes.

Related information

Collection Services

The QYRMJOBSEL job

For every job monitor that runs, a QYRMJOBSEL job starts. This topic explains the purpose of the QYRMJOBSEL job and what causes it to end.

The QYRMJOBSEL uses the information that is specified in the General page of the Job Monitor definition (**Management Central** → **Monitors** → **Job** → **Right-click a monitor and click Proprieties**) with Collection Services data (QYPSPFCOL) to determine what specific jobs need to be monitored. These jobs are then shown in the bottom half of the Job Monitor status window.

Even if only one job is running, QYRMJOBSEL still examines all of the active job data from Collection Services to determine how many jobs are running, if new instances have started or if instances that were running during the previous interval have ended. The QYRMJOBSEL job does this analysis at each interval. Thus, the amount of CPU resource that is needed for QYRMJOBSEL to complete this function is determined by how many active jobs are on the system. The more active jobs, the more jobs for QYRMJOBSEL to analyze.

Additionally, the QYRMJOBSEL job registers with Collection Services the needed probe data, but it cannot provide the notification interval. So it is always at the lowest interval at which Collection Services is running. Thus, a smaller collection interval means that this processing is performed more frequently.

For example, suppose the job monitor server starts a job monitor at 5 minute collection intervals. Then another monitor that is using Collection Services starts, but uses a smaller interval. As a result, the QYRMJOBSEL receives the data at the smaller or more frequent interval. If the smaller interval is 30 seconds, there will be a 10 time increase in the amount of data QYRMJOBSEL processes, thereby increasing the need for CPU resources.

When the job monitor is stopped, its associated QYRMJOBSEL job receives an ENDJOB immediate and terminates with a CPC1125 Completion 50 severity. This is the normal way that the QYRMJOBSEL is removed from the system.

Note: For QYRMJOBSEL to work properly, the Java time zone must be correctly set. This is done by setting the QTIMZON system value.

QZRCRVS jobs and their impact on performance

Job monitors connect to a QZRCRVS job for each job that is being monitored for the Job Log Messages and the Job Status metrics. The more jobs that are being monitored for these metrics, the more QZRCRVS jobs are used.

QZRCRVS jobs are not Management Central jobs. They are i5/OS TCP Remote Command Server jobs that the Management Central Java server uses for calling commands and APIs. In order to process the API calls for the Job Log Messages and Job Status metrics in a timely fashion within the job monitor's interval length, the APIs are called for each job concurrently at interval time.

When both metrics are specified on the same monitor, two QZRCSRVS jobs are started for each job. For example, if 5 jobs are monitored for Job Log Messages, 5 QZRCSRVS jobs are started to support the monitor. If 5 jobs are monitored for Job Log Messages and Job Status, then 10 QZRCSRVS jobs are started.

Thus, it is recommended that for standard systems, when you are using the Job Log Message and Job Status metrics, you limit the number of jobs monitored on a small system to 40 jobs or less. (With larger systems more jobs may be monitored. However, you need to have a clear understanding of the resources that are used when monitoring more jobs and determine the affordable number to monitor.) Also, severely limit using these two metrics for monitoring subsystems, as doing so can cause a large number of QZRCSRVS jobs to run. (A job monitor that uses just the other metrics and does not use Job Status or Job Log Message, does not use QZRCSRVS jobs.)

Tuning QZRCSRVS jobs

For jobs that pass work to the QZRCSRVS jobs, the subsystem that is specified on the QWTPCPUT API determines where the QZRCSRVS jobs run. QWTPCPUT is called during the processing of the QYSMPUT API. This API retrieves the subsystem information from the QUSRSYS/QYSMSVRE *USRIDX object and uses it on the QWTPCPUT call. As shipped, QZRCSRVS jobs are prestart jobs that run in the QUSRWRK subsystem and this is where the connections are routed.

If you end the prestart jobs in QUSRWRK with the ENDPJ command, then the QZRCSRVS jobs start as batch-immediate jobs in the QSYSWRK subsystem whenever a connection is requested. No jobs start in advance of the connection.

You can configure your system so that prestart jobs can be run from any subsystem. You can also configure your system to prevent batch-immediate jobs from being used at all. If the job monitor server jobs are calling Java Toolbox functions to pass work to QZRCSRVS, then they are using the QYSMPUT API, and the work must run in whichever subsystem is stored in the user index.

QZRCSRVS cleanup

A cleanup thread runs once an hour to determine whether a QZRCSRVS job is still being used by a Job Monitor. It determines if the job was used at least twice within the maximum job monitor interval length. If the job is not used during the previous two hours, it is ended. Java time stamps are used for this comparison, so it is imperative that the time zone value used by Java is correct (system value QTIMZON).

QZRCSRVS jobs are automatically removed two hours after the job it supports ends. Likewise QZRCSRVS jobs will end if the Job Monitor that created them stops, or if Management Central ends.

Note: Since the Management Central Job Monitor monitors active jobs, you might see messages like "Internal job identifier no longer valid" in the QZRCSRVS job. This normally happens when a monitored job with Job Log Messages or the Job Status metric ends while the monitor is running.

| Special considerations

| When working with Management Central monitors, you need to consider these special points.

| Special considerations when working with job monitors

- | • The Job Count metric monitors the number of active jobs that match the job selection criteria during a collection interval.
- | • The Job Monitor window (**Management Central** → **Monitors** → **Job** → **Right-click a job monitor** → **Open**) shows jobs that meet the criteria even if the jobs are no longer active at the end of the interval.
- | Collection services provides information that determines the job count as well as the jobs to display in the window. This data contains information about all of the jobs that are active during that interval.

- Nevertheless, it is possible that if a job uses negligible CPU, then information about that job is not passed to the job monitor and so it does not appear in the count or the detail status display.
- For the metrics Job Status and Job Log Message if a job monitor triggers it continues to display those jobs that created the condition even if a job has ended and is not active during the interval. For this condition the job displays with a gray icon, and continues to be displayed until the trigger resets or the monitor restarts.

Special considerations when working with file monitors

- The Text metric monitors for a specific text string. When you use this metric, the File Monitor obtains a shared read lock on the files that it is monitoring. Programs which obtain a shared update lock can update files without interfering with the monitor. However, users, programs and commands (such as the Work with Objects using Programming Development Manager (WRKOBJPDM) command or the Start Source Entry Utility (STRSEU) command) that obtain an exclusive lock will interfere with the file monitor and might cause it to either fail or to not be able to monitor the criteria during each interval.
- A file monitor uses an integrated file system to access the information that it needs about the files that it is monitoring. Integrated file systems treat QSYS physical files as directories. Only the physical file members are actually treated as "files". If you want to monitor the size of the entire contents of the QSYS physical file you must monitor all of the members that it contains (typically a single file member).
For example, to monitor the size of the database file QAYIVDTA in the QMGTC library enter /qsys.lib/qmgtc.lib/qayivdta.file/qayivdta.mbr in the Files To Monitor field (**Management Central** → **Monitors** → **File** → **Right-click a monitor** → **Properties** → **General tab**). You can view the size of the database file from within the iSeries Navigator File System.
- The Text metric is the only valid metric when monitoring the QHST file.

Special considerations when working with system monitors

- The V5R3 PTF SI18471 introduced the ability for the central system to try to restart a system monitor regardless of the reason. (Before this PTF, the central system would only restart a system monitor if the failure was due to a connection failure with the endpoint and if the monitor was still in a started status. This meant that only monitors with multiple endpoints that suffered connection failures were restarted.) To use this feature the following conditions must be met:
- The central system must be running release V5R4 or later. (This capability is also available on V5R3 central systems provided the PTF SI18471 is installed.)
 - The keyword &RESTART is in the name of system monitor.
 - The Management Central property **Automatically restart monitors on failed systems** is checked. (**Right-click Management Central** → **Properties** → **Connection tab**)

Creating a new monitor

Creating a new monitor is a process that begins at the New Monitor window. In iSeries Navigator, expand Management Central, expand **Monitors**, right-click the type of monitor you want to create (for example, **Job**), and then click **New Monitor**.

After you have given your new monitor a name, the next step is to specify what you want to monitor. If you are creating a job monitor, you will select which jobs you want to monitor. Be careful to monitor the smallest number of jobs that will give you the information you need. Monitoring a large number of jobs may have a performance impact on your system.

You can specify the jobs to monitor in these ways:

Jobs to monitor

You can specify jobs by their job name, job user, job type and subsystem. When specifying job name, job user and subsystem, you can use an asterisk (*) as a wildcard to represent one or more characters.

Servers to monitor

You can specify jobs by their server names. Select from the list of **Available servers** on the **Servers to monitor** tab. You can also specify a custom server by clicking the **Add custom server** button on the New Monitor or Monitor Properties - General page under the **Servers to monitor** tab. To create a custom server, use the Change Job (QWTCHGJB) API

When multiple job selection criteria are specified, all jobs matching any of the criteria are monitored.

Selecting the metrics

For each type of monitor, Management Central offers several measurements, known as *metrics*, to help you pinpoint different aspects of system activity. A metric is a measurement of a particular characteristic of a system resource or the performance of a program or a system.

For a *system monitor*, you can select from a wide range of available metrics, such as CPU utilization, interactive response time, transaction rate, disk arm utilization, disk storage, disk IOP utilization, and more.

For a *message monitor*, you can specify one or more message IDs, message types, severity levels. You can also select from a list of predefined sets of messages that are associated with a specific type of problem, such as a communications link problem, a cabling or hardware problem, or a modem problem.

For a *file monitor*, you can select to monitor files across multiple endpoint systems for a specified text string or for a specified size. Or, you can select to trigger an event whenever a specified file has been modified. You can select one or more files to be monitored, or you can select the **History log** option, which will monitor the i5/OS history log (QHST).

For a *job monitor*, available metrics include job count, job status, job log messages, CPU utilization, logical I/O rate, disk I/O rate, communications I/O rate, transaction rate, and more.

The Metrics page in the New Monitor window allows you to view and change the metrics that you want to monitor. To access this page, click **Monitors**, right-click the type of monitor you want to create (for example, **Job**), and then click **New Monitor**. Fill in the required fields, and then click the **Metrics** tab.

Use the online help to assist you in selecting your metrics. Remember to specify threshold values that allow you to be notified and to specify actions to be taken when a certain value (called the trigger value) is reached.

System monitor metrics

Metrics that you can use in a system monitor include the following:

Table 6. System monitor metric definitions

Name	Description
CPU Utilization (Average)	The percentage of available processing unit time that is being consumed by all jobs, threads of a job, and Licensed Internal Code tasks on the system. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs or tasks with the highest CPU utilization.

Table 6. System monitor metric definitions (continued)

CPU Utilization (Interactive Jobs)	<p>The percentage of available processing unit time that is being consumed on the system for all jobs which include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A 5250 workstation that includes a Twinax attached remote line and local area network (LAN) line • Systems Network Architecture (SNA) attached line that includes SNA display station pass-through • All Telnet sessions, for example, LAN, IBM Personal Communications, iSeries Access PC5250, and other SNA or Telnet emulators <p>Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 interactive jobs (5250 jobs) with the highest CPU utilization.</p>
CPU Utilization (Interactive Feature)	<p>The percentage of available interactive capability. The model number of your server (and for some models, the optional interactive feature card) determines the interactive capability of your system. It is possible to operate at greater than 100% of your available interactive capability. However, optimal system performance is achieved by maintaining an interactive workload that does not exceed the 100% level for extended periods. A recommended range should be approximately equal to or less than 70%. Click any collection point in the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest CPU contributing to this workload.</p>
CPU Utilization Basic (Average)	<p>The percentage of available processing unit time that is being consumed by all jobs on the system. This metric includes the same work as CPU Utilization (Average) but does not include active job details. No additional data is available for this metric. You save system resource by not tracking the more detailed information.</p>
CPU Utilization (Secondary Workloads)	<p>The percentage of available processing unit time that is being consumed by secondary workloads running on your dedicated server. For example, if your system is a dedicated server for Domino, Domino work is considered the primary workload. CPU Utilization (Secondary Workloads) shows the available processing unit time that is being consumed by any work other than Domino work on your server and can include WebSphere Java and general Java servlets that run as Domino applications. No additional data is available for this metric.</p>
CPU Utilization (Database Capability)	<p>The percentage of available database capability that is being consumed by i5/OS database functions on your system, which includes file I/O, SQL, and general query functions. The model number and features of your system determine the amount of CPU available for database processing on your system. A recommended range should be approximately equal to or less than CPU Utilization (Average). Click any collection point in the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest database CPU utilization.</p>
Interactive Response Time (Average)	<p>The average response time, in seconds, being experienced by 5250 interactive jobs on the system. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest response time.</p>
Interactive Response Time (Maximum)	<p>The maximum response time, in seconds, that has been experienced by any 5250 interactive job on the system during the collection interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest response time.</p>
Transaction Rate (Average)	<p>The number of transactions that are being completed per second by all active jobs on the system. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest transaction rate.</p>

Table 6. System monitor metric definitions (continued)

Transaction Rate (Interactive)	<p>The number of transactions that are being completed per second on the system by active 5250 jobs, which include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A 5250 workstation that includes a Twinax attached remote line and local area network (LAN) line • Systems Network Architecture (SNA) attached line that includes SNA display station pass-through • All Telnet sessions, for example, LAN, IBM Personal Communications, iSeries Access PC5250, and other SNA or Telnet emulators <p>Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest transaction rate.</p>
Batch Logical Database I/O	<p>The average number of logical database input/output (I/O) operations being performed per second by all non-5250 batch jobs on the system. A logical I/O operation occurs when data is transferred between the system and application I/O buffers. This metric indicates how much work your batch jobs are performing during any given interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 batch jobs with the highest number of logical database I/O operations per second.</p>
Disk Arm Utilization (Average)	<p>The average percentage of all disk arm capacity that was utilized on the system during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the disk arms on the system are during the current interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each disk arm.</p>
Disk Arm Utilization (Maximum)	<p>The maximum percentage of capacity that was utilized by any disk arm on the system during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the disk arms on the system are during the current interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each disk arm.</p>
Disk Storage (Average)	<p>The average percentage of storage that was full on all disk arms during the collection interval. This metric shows how full the disk arms on the system are during the current interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the percentage of storage that was full on each disk arm.</p>
Disk Storage (Maximum)	<p>The maximum percentage of storage that was full on any disk arm on the system during the collection interval. This metric shows how full the disk arms on the system are during the current interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the percentage of storage that was full on each disk arm.</p>
Disk IOP Utilization (Average)	<p>The average utilization of all the disk input/output processors (IOPs) during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the disk IOPs on the system are during the current interval. Multifunction IOPs can perform both Disk and Communication I/O work and can therefore be reported under either or both categories. If they performed work in both areas, the division of utilization is unknown and is reported fully under each category. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each input/output processor (IOP).</p>
Disk IOP Utilization (Maximum)	<p>The maximum utilization of any disk input/output processor (IOP) during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the disk IOPs on the system are during the current interval. Multifunction IOPs can perform both Disk and Communication I/O work and can therefore be reported under either or both categories. If they performed work in both areas, the division of utilization is unknown and is reported fully under each category. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each input/output processor (IOP).</p>

Table 6. System monitor metric definitions (continued)

Communications IOP Utilization (Average)	The average utilization of all the communications input/output processors (IOPs) during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the communications IOPs on the system are during the current interval. Multifunction IOPs can perform both Disk and Communication I/O work and can therefore be reported under either or both categories. If they performed work in both areas, the division of utilization is unknown and is reported fully under each category. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each input/output processor (IOP).
Communications IOP Utilization (Maximum)	The maximum utilization of any communications input/output processor (IOP) during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the communications IOPs on the system are during the current interval. Multifunction IOPs can perform both Disk and Communication I/O work and can therefore be reported under either or both categories. If they performed work in both areas, the division of utilization is unknown and is reported fully under each category. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each input/output processor (IOP).
Communications Line Utilization (Average)	The average amount of data that was actually sent and received for all non-LAN lines that are active during the time you collect data. Line utilization is an approximation of the actual amount of data transmitted compared with the theoretical limit of the lines based on the line speed settings in the line descriptions. The communication lines included on this monitor are one of the following line types: Bisync, Async, IDLC, X25, LAPD, SDLC, or PPP. This metric shows how actively the system is using its communication lines. If you have communications lines, such as fax lines, that are very busy much of the time, you may want to exclude these heavily utilized lines from the system monitor graph. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each line on the system.
Communications Line Utilization (Maximum)	The maximum amount of data that was actually sent and received for all non-LAN lines that are active during the time you collect data. Line utilization is an approximation of the actual amount of data transmitted compared with the theoretical limit of the line based on its line speed setting in the line description. The communication lines included on this monitor are one of the following line types: Bisync, Async, IDLC, X25, LAPD, SDLC, or PPP. This metric shows how actively the system is using its communication lines. If you have communications lines, such as fax lines, that are very busy much of the time, you may want to exclude these heavily utilized lines from the system monitor graph. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each line on the system.
LAN Utilization (Average)	The average amount of data that was actually sent and received on all local area network (LAN) lines in the system, compared with the theoretical limit of the lines based on the line speed settings in the line descriptions. The LAN lines included on this monitor are one of the following line types: token-ring or Ethernet. This metric shows how actively the system is using its LAN lines. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each line on the system.
LAN Utilization (Maximum)	The maximum amount of data that was actually sent and received on any local area network (LAN) line in the system, compared with the theoretical limit of the line based on its line speed setting in the line description. The LAN lines included on this monitor run one of the following line types: token-ring or Ethernet. This metric shows how actively the system is using its LAN lines. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each line on the system.

Table 6. System monitor metric definitions (continued)

Machine Pool Faults	The average number of faults per second that occur in the machine pool of the system during the time you collect the data. Only Licensed Internal Code runs in the machine pool. This metric shows the level of faulting activity in the system's machine pool. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the number of faults per second in the system's machine pool.
User Pool Faults (Average)	The average number of faults per second occurring in all of the user pools on the system during the time you collect the data. This metric shows how much faulting activity is occurring in the system's user pools. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the number of faults per second in each auxiliary storage pool.
User Pool Faults (Maximum)	The maximum number of faults per second occurring in all of the user pools on the system during the time you collect the data. This metric shows how much faulting activity is occurring in the system's user pools. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the number of faults per second in each auxiliary storage pool.

Job monitor metrics

You can use any metric, a group of metrics, or all the metrics from the list to be included in your monitor. Metrics you can use in a job monitor include the following:

Table 7. Job monitor metric definitions

Name	Description
Job Count	Monitor for a specific number of jobs matching the job selection.
Job Status	Monitor for jobs in any selected status, such as Completed, Disconnected, Ending, Held while running, or Initial thread held. Remember: Metrics for job status can affect performance. Limit the number of jobs that you are monitoring to 40.
Job Log Messages	Monitor for messages based on any combination of Message ID, Type, and Minimum severity.

Job numeric values

Table 8. Job numeric values definition

Name	Description
CPU Utilization	The percentage of available processing unit time used by all jobs that are included by this monitor on this system.
Logical I/O Rate	The number of logical I/O actions, per second, by each job that is being monitored on this system.
Disk I/O Rate	The average number of I/O operations, per second, performed by each job that is being monitored on this system. The value in this column is the sum of the asynchronous and synchronous disk I/O operations.
Communications I/O Rate	The number of communications I/O actions, per second, by each job that is being monitored on this system.

Table 8. Job numeric values definition (continued)

Transaction Rate	The number of transactions per second by each job that is being monitored on this system.
Transaction Time	The total transaction time for each job that is being monitored on this system.
Thread Count	The number of active threads in each job that is being monitored on this system.
Page Fault Rate	The average number of times, per second, that an active program in each job that is being monitored on this system refers to an address that is not in main storage.

Summary numeric values

Table 9. Summary numeric values definition

Name	Description
CPU Utilization	The percentage of available processing unit time used by all jobs monitored on this system. For multiple-processor systems, this is the average percent busy for all processors.
Logical I/O Rate	The number of logical I/O actions, per second, by all jobs monitored on this system.
Disk I/O Rate	The average number of I/O operations, per second, performed by all jobs monitored on this system. The value in this column is the sum of the asynchronous and synchronous disk I/O operations.
Communications I/O Rate	The number of communications I/O actions, per second, by all jobs monitored on this system.
Transaction Rate	The number of transactions per second by all jobs monitored on this system.
Transaction Time	The total transaction time for all jobs monitored on this system.
Thread Count	The number of active threads for all jobs monitored on this system.
Page Fault Rate	The average number of times, per second, that active programs in all jobs monitored on this system refer to an address that is not in main storage.

Specifying the threshold values

Setting a threshold for a metric that is being collected by a monitor allows you to be notified and, optionally, to specify actions to be taken when a certain value (called the *trigger value*) is reached. You can also specify actions to be taken when a second value (called the *reset value*) is reached.

For example, when you create a system monitor, you can specify an i5/OS command that stops any new jobs from starting when CPU utilization reaches 90% and another i5/OS command that allows new jobs to start when CPU utilization falls to less than 70%.

For some metrics, it is appropriate to specify a reset value, which resets the threshold and allows it to be triggered again when the trigger value is reached. For those thresholds, you can specify a command to be run when the reset value is reached. For other metrics (such as the File Status metric and the Text metric on file monitors, and any message set on a message monitor), you can specify to automatically reset the threshold when the trigger command is run.

You can set up to two thresholds for each metric that the monitor is collecting. Thresholds are triggered and reset based on the value at the time the metric collection is made. Specifying a higher number of collection intervals in the Duration field helps to avoid unnecessary threshold activity due to frequent spiking of values.

You can also choose to add an event to the Event Log whenever the trigger value or the reset value is reached.

On the New Monitor - Metrics page, the threshold tabs provide a place for you to specify a threshold value for each metric that you have selected to monitor. For example, if you are creating a job monitor, you can set your threshold values in the following ways depending on the type of metric you have selected:

Job Count	<p>When you define a threshold, you can specify a command to run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. For example, selecting → 25 jobs will trigger the threshold whenever the monitor detects more than 25 jobs running during the number of collection intervals you specify for Duration.</p> <p>You can then specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the monitor detects more than 25 jobs. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command. For more detailed information and examples of specifying commands to be run when thresholds are triggered, see the performance scenarios topic.</p> <p>Enable reset is optional, and cannot be selected until a trigger is defined. You can also specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset.</p>
Job Log Message	<p>You must select Trigger when any of the following messages are sent to the job log before you can specify the conditions to trigger a threshold. You can specify messages to monitor for based on any combination of Message ID, Type, and Minimum severity. Each row in the Job Log Message table shows a combination of criteria that must be met for a message to trigger a threshold. A threshold will be triggered if it meets the criteria in at least one row. Use the online help to specify the conditions to trigger a threshold.</p> <p>Be careful to monitor the smallest number of jobs that will give you the information you need. Monitoring a large number of jobs for job log messages may have a performance impact on your system.</p> <p>You can specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command.</p> <p>Be sure to click the Collection Interval tab to specify how often you want the monitor to check for job log messages.</p> <p>A message trigger can only be manually reset. You can specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset. When you reset the monitor, you always have the option to reset without running the specified command.</p>

Job Status	<p>On the Metrics - General tab, select the statuses that you want to monitor for. Click the Metrics - Status Threshold tab to specify the conditions to trigger a threshold. You must select Trigger when job is in any selected status before you can specify the conditions to trigger a threshold. The threshold is triggered whenever the monitor detects that the job is in any selected status for the number of collection intervals you specify for Duration.</p> <p>You can then specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command.</p> <p>Reset when job is not in selected statuses is optional, and cannot be selected until a trigger is defined. You can specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset.</p>
Job Numeric Values	<p>When you define the threshold, you can specify a command to run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. For example, selecting → 101 transactions per second for the Transaction Rate metric will trigger the threshold whenever the monitor detects more than 101 transactions per second on any of the selected jobs during the number of collection intervals you specify for Duration.</p> <p>You can then specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the monitor detects more than 101 transactions per second. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command.</p> <p>Enable reset is optional, and cannot be selected until a trigger is defined. You can also specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset.</p>
Summary Numeric Values (total for all jobs)	<p>When you define a threshold, you can specify a command to run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. For example, selecting → 1001 transactions per second for the Transaction Rate metric will trigger the threshold whenever the monitor detects more than 1001 transactions per second on all of the selected jobs during the number of collection intervals you specify for Duration.</p> <p>You can then specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the monitor detects more than 1001 transactions per second. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command.</p> <p>Enable reset is optional, and cannot be selected until a trigger is defined. You can also specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset.</p>

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview → Management Central**.

Specifying the collection interval

When you are setting thresholds for the metrics you have selected to monitor, you should consider how often you want the data to be collected.

Click the **Collection Interval** tab to select whether to use the same collection interval for all metrics, or to use different collection intervals for each metric type. For example, you may want to collect job count data every 30 seconds, but you may want to collect the job log message data every 5 minutes because job log message data typically takes longer to collect than job count data.

If you want to monitor numeric and status metrics for less than 5 minutes, you must select **Use different collection interval**.

Note: The job count, job numeric values, and summary numeric values metrics must have an equal or lesser collection interval than the collection interval for the job status metric.

- | To specify the number of collection intervals for each threshold, click the **Metrics** tab and indicate the
- | number of intervals in the **Duration** field.

Specifying threshold run commands

A *threshold* is a setting for a metric that is being collected by a monitor. *Threshold commands* run automatically on your endpoint system when threshold events occur. Threshold commands are different from any threshold actions you may have set. Threshold actions happen on your PC or central system, while threshold commands run on your endpoint systems.

Using threshold commands

Threshold settings are used to automate any i5/OS command you want to run when thresholds are triggered or reset. For example, suppose you are running a job monitor and a certain batch job that is supposed to complete before the first shift begins is still running at 6:00 a.m. To accomplish this, you can set up Threshold 1 to send a page command to a system operator to look at it. You can also set up Threshold 2 to send a command to end the job if it is still running at 7:00 a.m.

In another situation, you might want to notify your operators with a page command when the job monitor detects that the wait time values for the FTP and HTTP servers have reached a median level. If the FTP server jobs end, you can restart the server with a start server command (such as STRTCPSVR *FTP). You can set thresholds and specify commands to automatically handle many different situations. In short, you can use threshold commands in any way that makes sense for your environment.

How do I set threshold commands?

On the New Monitor-Metrics page, click the **Thresholds** tab to enable your thresholds. Before you can set any threshold commands, you must turn your thresholds on by selecting the **Enable trigger** (or similarly named) option. You can then use this window to enter any commands you want to run when the threshold trigger value is reached. Select the **Enable reset** (or similarly named) option if you want to specify a command to run when the threshold reset value is reached.

Management Central monitors allow you to specify any batch commands to run on the server when the threshold is triggered or reset. You can enter an i5/OS command name and click **Prompt** (or press F4) for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command. You can even use replacement variables (such as &TIME or &NUMCURRENT) to pass information to the command, such as the time and actual value of the metric.

Specifying event logging and actions

When you have specified the threshold values for your monitor, you can click the **Actions** tab to select event logging and the PC actions to be taken when a threshold is triggered or reset.

Some of the actions you can select are:

Table 10. Actions that you can select

Action	Description
Log event	Adds an entry to the event log on the central system when the threshold is triggered or reset. The entry includes the date and time the event occurred, the endpoint system being monitored, the metric being collected, and the monitor that logged the event.
Open event log	Displays the event log when an event occurs.
Open monitor	Displays a list of systems that are being monitored for the specified metrics and a list of the values for the specified metrics as they are collected for each system.
Sound alarm	Sounds an alarm on the PC when the threshold for the monitor is triggered.

Table 10. Actions that you can select (continued)

Run i5/OS command	If you have specified a server command to run when the threshold for this monitor is triggered or reset, those commands run only during times that actions are applied. This option cannot be changed from the Actions page. If you do not want the command to run, you can remove the command from the Metrics page. Whenever you manually reset a threshold, you can select whether to run the specified reset command.
-------------------	---

When you have specified the actions that you want to take when a threshold value is reached, you are ready to specify when to apply the thresholds and actions you have selected.




How to read the event log

The Event log window displays a list of threshold trigger and reset events for all of your monitors. You can specify on the Monitor Properties - Actions page for each monitor whether you want events added to the Event Log. To see the Properties pages for any monitor, select the monitor in the Monitors list and then select Properties from the File menu.

The list of events is arranged in order by date and time by default, but you can change the order by clicking on any column heading. For example, to sort the list by the endpoint system where the event occurred, click System.

An icon to the left of each event indicates the type of event:

Table 11. Icons and meanings they indicate

Icon	Description
	Indicates that this event is a trigger event for which you did not specify a server command to be run when the threshold was triggered.
	Indicates that this event is a trigger event for which you specified a server command to be run when the threshold was triggered.
	Indicates that this event is a threshold reset event.

You can customize the list of events to include only those that meet specific criteria by selecting **Options** from the menu bar and then selecting **Include**.

You can specify which columns of information you want to display in the list and the order in which you want the columns to be displayed by selecting **Options** from the menu bar and then selecting **Columns**.

You can view the properties of an event to get more information about what triggered the event log entry.

You can have more than one Event Log window open at the same time, and you can work with other windows while the Event Log windows are open. Event Log windows are updated continuously as events occur.

Applying thresholds and actions for a monitor

When you have specified your threshold values and chosen to log events, you can select whether to always apply these thresholds and actions, or to apply them only on the days and times you choose.

- | **Note:** Because system monitors run continuously, the following information does not apply. If you select to apply thresholds and actions during specified times, you must select the starting time and the stopping time. If the central system is in a different time zone from the endpoint system, you should be aware that the thresholds and actions will be applied when the starting time is reached on the endpoint system that you are monitoring. You must also select at least one day that you want the thresholds and actions to apply. The thresholds and actions apply from the selected starting time on the selected day until the next occurrence of the stopping time on the endpoint system.

For example, if you want to apply your thresholds and actions overnight on Monday night, you can select 11:00 p.m. as the **From** time and 6:00 a.m. as the **To** time and check **Monday**. The actions that you specified occur whenever the specified thresholds are reached at any time between 11:00 p.m. on Monday and 6:00 a.m. on Tuesday.

Use the online help to finish creating your monitor. The online help also contains instructions on starting your monitor.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Viewing monitor results

When you have specified when to apply the thresholds and actions you have defined for your monitor, you are ready to view your monitor results.

Double-click the monitor name to open the Monitor window. In the Monitor window, you can see the overall status of the monitor and a list of the target systems that the monitor is running on.

- | For job, message and file monitors, a list of the target systems (Summary Area) in the upper pane shows the status of the monitor on each system and the date and time that the monitor data was last collected. The Summary Area also shows additional information related to the specific metrics being collected.

After you select a system, detailed information about what is being monitored on that system is shown in the lower pane. For example, if you are viewing a Job Monitor window, the list of jobs in the lower pane shows the triggered events, the last event that occurred, and the actual values for the specified metrics.

You can select **Columns** from the Options menu to display additional columns of information. Click Help on the Columns window to see a description of each column.

From the list in the lower pane, you can right-click any item and select from a menu of actions that can be performed. For example, if you select a job, you can select reset triggered events, display job properties, hold, release, or end a job.

- | For system monitors, detailed information displays as graphs that you can save and print.

You can view all your monitors, as well as all your iSeries Navigator systems management tasks, remotely with iSeries Navigator for Wireless.

Graph history concepts

Contains a description of the available options for managing and displaying records of performance data.

Graph history displays data contained in the collection objects created by Collection Services. Therefore, the type and amount of data available is dependent on your Collection Services configuration.

The amount of data that is available to be graphed is determined by the settings that you selected from the Collection Services properties, specifically the collection retention period. Use iSeries Navigator to activate PM iSeries over multiple systems. When you activate PM iSeries, you can use the graph history

function to see data that was collected days ago, weeks ago, or months ago. You go beyond the realtime monitor capabilities, and have access to summary or detailed data. Without PM iSeries enabled, the graph data field supports 1 to 7 days. With PM iSeries enabled, you define how long your management collection objects remain on the system:

- | • **Detailed data** (attribute type *PFR in QMPGDATA.LIB or QPFRDATA.LIB)
The length of time that management collection objects remain in the file system before they are deleted. You can select a specific time period in hours or days, or you can select **Permanent**. If you select **Permanent**, the management collection objects will not be automatically deleted.
- | • **Graph data** (attribute type *PFRDTL in QMGTC2.LIB)
The length of time that the details and properties data that is shown in the Graph History window remains in the system before it is deleted. If you do not start PM iSeries, you can specify one to seven days. If you do start PM iSeries, you can specify 1 to 30 days. The default is one hour.
- | • **Summary data** (attribute type *PFRHST in QMGTC2.LIB)
The length of time that the data collection points of a graph can be displayed in the Graph History window or remain in the system before they are deleted. No details or properties data is available. You must start PM iSeries to enable the summary data fields. The default is one month. The summary data is summarized in one-hour intervals and does not support second- and third-level details.
- | • **Graph history status**
The Graph History window now displays the graph history status. You also can re-create the graph history data if it is missing.

Viewing graph history

This topic contains step-by-step instructions to view graph history through iSeries Navigator.

About this task

Graph history is included in iSeries Navigator. To view the graph history of the data that you are monitoring with Collection Services, do these steps:

1. Follow the iSeries Navigator online help for starting Collection Services on either a single system or on a system group.
2. From the **Start Collection Services - General** page, select **Start IBM Performance Management for eServer iSeries** if needed.
3. Make changes to the other values for the collection retention period.
4. Click **OK**.
5. You can view the graph history by right-clicking either a system monitor or a Collection Services object and selecting **Graph History**.
6. Click **Refresh** to see the graphical view.

Results

- | **Tip:** If the graph history data is missing, you can re-create it. To re-create the graph history data, right-click on the object in iSeries Navigator and choose **Create Graph History Data**.

Once you have launched a graph history, a window displays a series of graphed collection points. These collection points on the graph line are identified by three different graphics that correspond to the three levels of data that are available:

- A square collection point represents data that includes both the detailed information and properties information.
- A triangular collection point represents summarized data that contains detailed information.
- A circular collection point represents data that contains no detailed information or properties information.

| What to do next

| The system adds data from the active collection object (*PFR attribute) to the *PFRDTL and *PFRHST collection objects when the following occurs:

- | • If the collection object properties is set to add graph data and summary data when cycled, the collection is cycled.
- | • If the already cycled object is selected and the menu option to summarize the data is selected.
- | • If a system monitor is running, then data is added to the *PFRDTL object only, as the system monitor is running.

Resetting triggered threshold for a monitor

When you are viewing the job monitor results, you can reset a triggered threshold.

You can choose to run the server command that was specified as the reset command for this threshold, or you can choose to reset the threshold without running the command.

You can also choose to reset thresholds at the job level, the summary level, the system level, or the monitor level:

Job level	Select one or more jobs in the Job Area of the Job Monitor window. Select File , select Reset with Command or Reset Only , and then select Jobs . The thresholds for the selected jobs will be reset. Other thresholds that have been triggered for this monitor remain in the triggered state.
Summary level	Select one or more systems in the Summary Area of the Job Monitor window. Select File , select Reset with Command or Reset Only , and then select Summary . The thresholds for job count, job numeric values metrics, and summary numeric values metrics will be reset. Other thresholds that have been triggered for this monitor remain in the triggered state.
System level	Select one or more systems in the Summary Area of the Job Monitor window. Select File , select Reset with Command or Reset Only , and then select System . All thresholds for this monitor on the selected systems will be reset. Thresholds for this monitor that have been triggered on other systems remain in the triggered state. Any selections you have made in the Job Area are ignored.
Monitor level	Select File , select Reset with Command or Reset Only , and then select Monitor . All thresholds for this monitor on all systems will be reset. Any selections you have made in the Summary Area or the Job Area are ignored.

Scenarios: iSeries Navigator monitors

Use this information to see how you can use some of the different types of monitors to look at specific aspects of your system's performance.

The monitors included in iSeries Navigator provide a powerful set of tools for researching and managing system performance. For an overview of the types of monitors provided by iSeries Navigator, see iSeries Navigator monitors.

For detailed usage examples and sample configurations, see the following scenarios:

Scenario: System monitor

See an example system monitor that alerts you if the CPU utilization gets too high and temporarily holds any lower priority jobs until more resources become available.

Situation

As a system administrator, you need to ensure that the system has enough resources to meet the current demands of your users and business requirements. For your system, CPU utilization is a particularly

important concern. You would like the system to alert you if the CPU utilization gets too high and to temporarily hold any lower priority jobs until more resources become available.

To accomplish this, you can set up a system monitor that sends you a message if CPU utilization exceeds 80%. Moreover, it can also hold all the jobs in the QBATCH job queue until CPU utilization drops to 60%, at which point the jobs are released, and normal operations resume.

Configuration example

To set up a system monitor, you need to define what metrics you want to track and what you want the monitor to do when the metrics reach specified levels. To define a system monitor that accomplishes this goal, complete the following steps:

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central** → **Monitors**, right-click **System Monitor**, and select **New Monitor...**
2. On the **General** page, enter a name and description for this monitor.
3. Click the **Metrics** tab, and enter the following values:
 - a. Select the **CPU Utilization Basic (Average)**, from the list of Available Metrics, and click **Add**. CPU Utilization Basic (Average) is now listed under Metrics to monitor, and the bottom portion of the window displays the settings for this metric.
 - b. For **Collection interval**, specify how often you would like to collect this data. This will override the Collection Services setting. For this example, specify **30 seconds**.
 - c. To change the scale for the vertical axis of the monitor's graph for this metric, change the **Maximum graphing value**. To change the scale for the horizontal axis of the graph for this metric, change the value for **Display time**.
 - d. Click the **Threshold 1** tab for the metrics settings, and enter the following values to send an inquiry message if the CPU Utilization is greater than or equal to 80%:
 - 1) Select **Enable threshold**.
 - 2) For the threshold trigger value, specify **>= 80** (greater than or equal to 80 percent busy).
 - 3) For **Duration**, specify **1** interval.
 - 4) For the **i5/OS command**, specify the following:

```
SNDMSG MSG('Warning,CPU...') TOUSR(*SYSOPR) MSGTYPE(*INQ)
```
 - 5) For the threshold reset value, specify **< 60** (less than 60 percent busy). This will reset the monitor when CPU utilization falls below 60%.
 - e. Click the **Threshold 2** tab, and enter the following values to hold all the jobs in the QBATCH job queue when CPU utilization stays above 80% for five collection intervals:
 - 1) Select **Enable threshold**.
 - 2) For the threshold trigger value, specify **>= 80** (greater than or equal to 80 percent busy).
 - 3) For **Duration**, specify **5** intervals.
 - 4) For the **i5/OS command**, specify the following:

```
HLDJOBQ JOBQ(QBATCH)
```
 - 5) For the threshold reset value, specify **< 60** (less than 60 percent busy). This will reset the monitor when CPU utilization falls below 60%.
 - 6) For **Duration**, specify **5** intervals.
 - 7) For the **i5/OS command**, specify the following:

```
RLSJOBQ JOBQ(QBATCH)
```

This command releases the QBATCH job queue when CPU utilization stays below 60% for 5 collection intervals.
4. Click the **Actions** tab, and select **Log event** in both the **Trigger** and **Reset** columns. This action creates an entry in the event log when the thresholds are triggered and reset.
5. Click the **Systems and groups** tab to specify the systems and groups you want to monitor.

6. Click **OK** to save the monitor.
7. From the list of system monitors, right-click the new monitor and select **Start**.

Results

The new monitor displays the CPU utilization, with new data points being added every 30 seconds, according to the specified collection interval. The monitor automatically carries out the specified threshold actions, even if your PC is turned off, whenever CPU utilization reaches 80%.

Note: This monitor tracks only CPU utilization. However, you can include any number of the available metrics in the same monitor, and each metric can have its own threshold values and actions. You can also have several system monitors that run at the same time.

Scenario: Job monitor for CPU utilization

See an example job monitor that tracks the CPU utilization of a specified job and alerts the job's owner if CPU utilization gets too high

Situation

You are currently running a new application on your system, and you are concerned that some of the new interactive jobs are consuming an unacceptable amount of resources. You would like the owners of the offending jobs to be notified if their jobs ever consume too much of the CPU capacity.

You can set up a job monitor to watch for the jobs from the new application and send a message if a job consumes more than 30% of the CPU capacity.

Configuration example

To set up a job monitor, you need to define which jobs to watch for, what job attributes to watch for, and what the monitor should do when the specified job attributes are detected. To set up a job monitor that accomplishes this goal, complete the following steps:

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central** → **Monitors**, right-click **Job monitor**, and select **New Monitor...**
2. On the **General** page, enter the following values:
 - a. Specify a name and description for this monitor.
 - b. On the **Jobs to monitor** tab, enter the following values:
 - 1) For the **Job name**, specify the name of the job you want to watch for (for example, MKWIDGET).
 - 2) Click **Add**.
3. Click the **Metrics** tab, and enter the following information:
 - a. In the **Available metrics** list, expand **Summary Numeric Values**, select **CPU Percent Utilization**, and click **Add**.
 - b. On the **Threshold 1** tab for the metrics settings, enter the following values:
 - 1) Select **Enable trigger**.
 - 2) For the threshold trigger value, specify **>= 30** (greater than or equal to 30 percent busy).
 - 3) For **Duration**, specify **1** interval.
 - 4) For the **i5/OS trigger command**, specify the following:

```
SNDMSG MSG('Your job is exceeding 30% CPU capacity')
TOUSR(&OWNER)
```
 - 5) Click **Enable reset**.
 - 6) For the threshold reset value, specify **< 20** (less than 20 percent busy).

4. Click the **Collection Interval** tab, and select **15 seconds**. This will override the Collection Services setting.
5. Click the **Actions** tab, and select **Log event** in both the **Trigger** and **Reset** columns.
6. Click the **Servers and groups** tab, and select the servers and groups you want to monitor for this job.
7. Click **OK** to save the new monitor.
8. From the list of job monitors, right-click the new monitor and select **Start**.

Results

The new monitor checks the QINTER subsystem every 15 seconds, and if the job MKWIDGET is consuming more than 30 percent of the CPU, the monitor sends a message to the job's owner. The monitor resets when the job uses less than 20% CPU capacity.

Scenario: Job monitor with Advanced Job Scheduler notification

See an example job monitor that sends an e-mail to an operator when the threshold limit of a job is exceeded.

Situation

You are currently running an application on your system, and you want to be notified if the CPU utilization reaches the specified threshold.

If the Advanced Job Scheduler is installed on the endpoint system, you can use the Send Distribution using JS (SNDDSTJS) command to notify someone by e-mail when the threshold is exceeded. For instance, you could specify that the notification escalate to the next person if the intended recipient does not respond by stopping the message. You could create on-call schedules and send the notification to only those people that are on-call. You can also send the notification to multiple e-mail addresses.

Job monitor configuration example

This example uses the SNDDSTJS command to send a message to a recipient named OPERATOR, which is a user-defined list of e-mail addresses. You can also specify an e-mail address instead of a recipient or both. To set up a job monitor that accomplishes this goal, complete the following steps:

Note: By using the code examples, you agree to the terms of the "Code license and disclaimer information" on page 84.

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central** → **Monitors**, right-click **Job monitor**, and select **New Monitor..**
2. On the **General** page, enter the following values:
 - a. Specify a name and description for this monitor.
 - b. On the **Jobs to monitor** tab, enter the following values:
 - 1) For the **Job name**, specify the name of the job you want to watch for (for example, MKWIDGET).
 - 2) Click **Add**.
3. Click the **Metrics** tab, and enter the following information:
 - a. In the **Available metrics** list, expand **Summary Numeric Values**, select **CPU Percent Utilization**, and click **Add**.
 - b. On the **Threshold 1** tab for the metrics settings, enter the following values:
 - 1) Select **Enable trigger**.
 - 2) For the threshold trigger value, specify **>= 30** (greater than or equal to 30 percent busy).
 - 3) For **Duration**, specify **1** interval.
 - 4) For the **i5/OS trigger command**, specify the following:

```
SNDDSTJS RCP(OPERATOR) SUBJECT('Job monitor trigger') MSG('Job
&JOBNAME is still running!')
```

- 5) Click **Enable reset**.
- 6) For the threshold reset value, specify **< 20** (less than 20 percent busy).
4. Click the **Collection Interval** tab, and select **15 seconds**. This will override the Collection Services setting.
5. Click the **Actions** tab, and select **Log event** in both the **Trigger** and **Reset** columns.
6. Click the **Servers and groups** tab, and select the servers and groups you want to monitor for this job.
7. Click **OK** to save the new monitor.
8. From the list of job monitors, right-click the new monitor and select **Start**.

Message monitor configuration example

If you use a message monitor, you can send the message text to the recipient. Here is an example of a CL program that retrieves the message text and sends an e-mail to all on-call recipients with the SNDDSTJS command.

Note: By using the code examples, you agree to the terms of the “Code license and disclaimer information” on page 84.

```
PGM PARM(&MSGKEY &TOMSGQ &TOLIB)

DCL &MSGKEY *CHAR 4
DCL &TOMSGQ *CHAR 10
DCL &TOLIB *CHAR 10

DCL &MSGTXT *CHAR 132

RCVMMSG MSGQ(&TOLIB/&TOMSGQ) MSGKEY(&MSGKEY)
      RMV(*NO) MSG(&MSGTXT)
      MONMSG CPF0000 EXEC(RETURN)

SNDDSTJS RCP(*ONCALL) SUBJECT('Message queue trigger')
MSG(&MSGTXT)
      MONMSG MSGID(CPF0000 IJS0000)

ENDPGM
```

This is the command that would call the CL program:

```
CALL SNDMAIL PARM('&MSGKEY' '&TOMSG' '&TOLIB')
```

Results

The monitor checks the QINTER subsystem every 15 seconds, and if the job MKWIDGET is consuming more than 30 percent of the CPU, the monitor sends an e-mail to the operator. The monitor resets when the job uses less than 20% CPU capacity.

See Work with notification for more information on the Advanced Job Scheduler notification function.

Scenario: Message monitor

See an example message monitor that displays any inquiry messages for your message queue that occur on any of your systems. The monitor opens and displays the message as soon as it is detected.

Situation

Your company has several systems, and it is time-consuming to check your message queue for each system. As a system administrator, you need to be aware of inquiry messages as they occur across your system.

You can set up a message monitor to display any inquiry messages for your message queue that occur on any of your systems. The monitor opens and displays the message as soon as it is detected.

Configuration example

To set up a message monitor, you need to define the types of messages you would like to watch for and what you would like the monitor to do when these messages occur. To set up a message monitor that accomplishes this goal, complete the following steps:

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central** → **Monitors**, right-click **Message monitor**, and select **New Monitor..**
2. On the **General** page, enter a name and description for this monitor.
3. Click the **Messages** tab, and enter the following values:
 - a. For **Message queue to monitor**, specify **QSYSOPR**.
 - b. On the **Message set 1** tab, select **Inquiry** for **Type**, and click **Add**.
 - c. Select **Trigger at the following message count**, and specify **1** message.
4. Click the **Collection Interval** tab, and select **15 seconds**.
5. Click the **Actions** tab, and select **Open monitor**.
6. Click the **Systems and groups** tab, and select the systems and groups you would like to monitor for inquiry messages.
7. Click **OK** to save the new monitor.
8. From the list of message monitors, right-click the new monitor and select **Start**.

Results

The new message monitor displays any inquiry messages sent to QSYSOPR on any of the systems that are monitored.

Note: This monitor responds to only inquiry messages sent to QSYSOPR. However, you can include two different sets of messages in a single monitor, and you can have several message monitors that run at the same time. Message monitors can also carry out i5/OS commands when specified messages are received.

Using other features of Management Central

After Management Central has been set up, you can use it to streamline your server administration tasks.

Working with inventory

The iSeries Navigator inventory functions can help you collect and manage various inventories on a regular basis and to store the data on the system that you selected as your central system.

For example, you can collect the inventory for users and groups, fixes, system values, hardware resources, software resources, service attributes, contact information, or network attributes. You may have other applications installed that allow you to collect lists of other types of resources.

You can either collect an inventory immediately or schedule it to be collected at a later time. You can schedule the inventory collection to occur daily, weekly, or monthly to keep your inventory current.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Viewing an inventory

After you have collected the inventory, you can view the inventory list and right-click any item in the list to see the actions you can perform on the item.

For example, to display the inventory of all installed products on an endpoint system, select Software Inventory (**Management Central** → **Endpoint Systems** → **any endpoint system** → **Configuration and Service** → **Software Inventory** → **Installed Products**) This is a very easy way to see what software is installed on the endpoint system. The **Status** column reflects the current status of the software (Installed or Installed and supported) at the time of the last inventory collection (which is shown above the list).

It is recommended that you schedule the collection of all your system inventories on a recurring basis to keep your central system's inventory current.

How to use inventories

When you view an inventory on an endpoint system, you can right-click any item in the inventory list to see the actions you can perform on the item. Also by selecting the properties menu option for an inventory item (such as hardware) more information is displayed about that item.

For example, here are just a few of the ways that you can use inventories to manage your systems:

- After you have collected *fixes inventory*, you can compare fixes on one or more endpoint systems to the fixes on a model system. You can then send the missing fixes to the target endpoint systems and install them on those systems. You can also export the fixes inventory to a PC file, which you can use to work with the data in a spreadsheet program or other application.
- When you are viewing a *software inventory*, you can select any software product in the list, send it to one or more target endpoint systems, and install it on those systems. You can also export the software inventory to a PC file, which you can use to work with the data in a spreadsheet program or other application.
- Display a *hardware inventory* list to see the resource, status, and description of all hardware on the endpoint system. This is a very easy way to check the operational status of your hardware. The Status column reflects the operational status at the time of the last inventory collection (which is shown above the list). You can right-click any hardware listed and select **Properties**. You can review a great deal of information under the General, Physical location, and Logical address tabs. You can use this information for upgrades as well as problem analysis. You can also export the hardware inventory to a PC file, which you can use to work with the data in a spreadsheet program or other application.
- When you display the list for a *user inventory*, you can right-click one or more users and select any of the following actions: delete, edit, view the properties, or scan for objects owned by a user. You can do similar actions with groups by selecting Group Inventory for an endpoint system.

You can search these inventories based on criteria that you specify. Additional search function is available when you search a users and groups inventory. You can export the results of the search or an entire inventory to a PC file to work with the data in a spreadsheet program or other application.

Running actions on an inventory

You might have applications installed that define actions that you can run against the collected inventory. If you have installed an application program that offers an action, you will see that action in the **Available actions** list in the Run Actions window.

To see the Run Actions window, right-click any system in the iSeries Navigator window, select **Inventory**, and then select **Run Actions**.

When you select an action from the **Available actions** list, a list of related inventories is shown under **Inventory for selected action**. You should select all the recommended inventories and then click **Add** to add this information to the **Selected actions to run** list.

For example, if you have installed the IBM Electronic Service Agent™ option of i5/OS, you can select **Send Electronic Service Agent inventory to IBM** from the **Available actions** list to receive your inventory data in a series of reports that show your system's growth and maintenance.

Searching a Management Central users and groups inventory

Searching on users and groups provides you with a lot of flexibility to query the user and group inventory for the information you want.

- | To access the **Search** window, right-click an endpoint system and select **Inventory** → **Search**.

The Basic search is for quick searches to find a particular user or group. The Advanced search page gives you the flexibility to search on additional profile properties. For example, you can search for all users on this endpoint system or system group with security officer authority by selecting Privilege class, and then selecting Security officer.

You can click **And** or **Or** to search on additional fields. For example, if you are searching for all users on this endpoint system or system group with security officer authority, you can narrow the search to users in your Accounting department with security officer authority by clicking **And** and selecting **Department** and entering the string **Accounting**.

From the Search Results window, you can perform many of the actions that you can perform on a user or group elsewhere within iSeries Navigator. For example, you can delete a user or group, edit the profile (for example, remove its Security Officer authority), view its properties, or scan for objects owned by a user or group. Also from the results window, you can export the search results into a spreadsheet, text file, or HTML (Web) page.


Advanced search is available only for user and group inventories, which require that both the central system and the endpoint systems are running OS/400 V5R1 or later.

Extreme Support

System i Extreme Support is part of the IBM Technical Support Advantage, which is IBM's comprehensive technical service and support for IBM Systems.

System i Extreme Support includes support built right into the product, iSeries Navigator, and support tools available over the Web. Some Extreme Support tools are Performance Management for System i5 over TCP/IP, Electronic Service Agent, and inventory consolidation with Management Central.

- | **Note:** Electronic Service Agent can only report problems to IBM successfully if your system is under warranty, or if you have purchased an IBM Maintenance Services Agreement.

For links to the User Guides for specific releases of Electronic Service Agent, go to the IBM Electronic Service Agent for iSeries  Web site.

Related information

Electronic Service Agent

Working with systems with partitions

- | The Systems with Partitions container that is located under Management Central lets you manage the logical partitions of all of the servers on the system from the central system.

- | With logical partitioning (LPAR), you can address multiple system requirements in a single system to achieve system consolidation, business unit consolidation, and mixed production or test environments. By itself, LPAR does not provide a significant availability increase. It can, however, be used to complement other availability strategies. Since each partition is treated as a separate system, you can run a single environment on a single system image. This can provide for a more cost efficient solution.

Authority requirements

Access to logical partition information in iSeries Navigator, Dedicated Service Tools (DST), and System Service Tools (SST) requires either operations or administration authority to the logical partition function. In addition, you need remote panel authorization if you want to use the Operations Console remote panel for secondary partitions from your PC.

Logical partitions can be created using iSeries Navigator. In order to access logical partition functions, you must first configure the service tools server. Service tools are used to configure, manage, and service your IBM iSeries model 270 or 8xx or logical partitions. If you want to manage logical partitions on servers other than model 8xx, you must use the Hardware Management Console (HMC). You will need to use a service tools user ID with LPAR administrator authority.

Related information

Configuring the service tools server

Partitioning with an iSeries Server

Logical partition concepts

Plan for logical partitions

Create logical partitions

Manage logical partitions by using iSeries Navigator, DST, and SST

Schedule moving logical partition resources

Related information for logical partitions

 [IBM - LPAR frequently asked questions](#)

Running commands with Management Central

iSeries Navigator enables you to define an action or a task and then perform that action or task on multiple endpoint systems or system groups. These are the same commands that you normally run using the character-based interface.

About this task

For example, you can use a command definition to perform any of the following tasks:

- Set network attributes on multiple endpoint systems or system groups
- Set up your own help desk or operations "procedures book" to handle customer and system needs.

Any control language (CL) command that you can run in batch, you can send to multiple systems at the same time. Create the command definition, and then run the command on endpoint systems or system groups.

To run a command with Management Central, complete the following steps:

1. Expand **Management Central** → **Endpoint System**.
2. Right-click the endpoint system on which you want to run the command and click **Run Command**. For more information about this window, click **Help**.

What to do next

You can click **Prompt** for assistance in entering or selecting an i5/OS command. You can choose to run the command immediately or schedule it to run at a later time.

Starting with V5R3, the command runs under the CCSID of the user profile that is submitting the command. If the profile is set to 65535 (or is set to *sysval, and the sysval is 65535), it uses the default CCSID 37.

| **Note:** Be sure that the command you specify is supported by the release of i5/OS that is running on the target endpoint system. For example, starting with V5R3 any outputs other than job logs that are produced by a Run command are viewed by expanding the system under **My Connections** → **Basic Output** → **Printer Output**.

| **Related information**

| Defining commands

| **Creating command definitions**

| **About this task**

| You can create a command definition to save a command that you want to run over and over on multiple endpoint systems and system groups. Storing a command definition on the central system allows you to share commonly used or complex commands with other users. When a command is run from a definition, a task is created.

| To create a command definition, complete the following steps:

- | 1. Expand **Management Central** → **Definitions**.
- | 2. Right-click **Command** and select **New Definition**.
- | 3. The New Command Definition window opens.

Packaging and sending objects with Management Central

A bulk data transfer is the process of sending packages, fixes, PDFs and so on, from a source system to a target system in a single transfer. This topic discusses package definitions, what happens when a package is sent, and how to troubleshoot a failed transfer.

What you can do with package definitions

Sending files to another system or group of systems is a simple point-and-click operation in iSeries Navigator. If you expect to send the same files again at a later date, you can create a *package definition*, which can be saved and reused at any time to send the defined set of files and folders to multiple endpoint systems or system groups. If you create a snapshot of your files, you can keep more than one version of copies of the same set of files. Sending a snapshot ensures that no updates are made to the files during the distribution, so that the last target system receives the same objects as the first target system.

Another benefit of using iSeries Navigator to package and send objects is that you can run a command when the distribution of the package is complete. This means that you can:

- Distribute a batch input stream and run it.
- Distribute a set of programs and start your application.
- Distribute a set of data files and run a program that acts on that data.

You can specify whether to include subfolders in the package. You can also specify whether to keep or replace any file that already exists on the target system. You can start the send task immediately or click **Schedule** to specify when you want the task to start.

You can select and send files and folders without creating a package definition. However, a package definition allows you to group together a set of i5/OS objects or integrated file system files. The package definition also allows you to view this same group of files as a logical set, or as a physical set, by taking a snapshot of the files to preserve them for later distribution.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Troubleshooting a failed transfer

- Look at the task's job log and try to determine a cause. From the Task Status window, right-click the failed endpoint and click **Task Output**.

Sending packages uses the Save/Restore function. When a save or restore operation issues an error or warning message, the Management Central package send function marks the status as failed. This does not necessarily mean that the entire process failed. You need to check the job log and determine the cause of the failure. It is possible that there is a message that indicates that the restore function worked with limitation and thus generated a warning.

- Make sure that the target system can connect back to the source system.

On the endpoint system ping itself by the long name. If this is successful, then on the source system, ping the endpoint system using its long name.

To complete a successful transfer, the target system must connect back to the source system. The IP address that is used on the target system is determined by the lookup frequency on the target system. If the lookup frequency is Never then the IP address that is used is the one that is provided by the central system for the source system.

It might be that target system cannot connect to the source system via this IP address, but can connect by using a different IP address, one that is defined in its host table. If the lookup frequency on the target is set to Always then it will use DNS, the host table, or both to determine the IP address of the source system and it will not use the IP address that is provided by the central system.

Distributing fixes to multiple systems with iSeries Navigator

After you have received your i5/OS fixes, you can use iSeries Navigator to distribute your fixes to other systems in your network.

In the past, object distribution and Systems Network Architecture distribution services (SNADS) were the choices when you wanted to send objects. If you are in a TCP/IP environment, you can use the iSeries Navigator graphical interface function of Management Central to send and distribute your fixes.

To understand how a network is set up, see the following list for a description of the different roles. A single system can assume more than one role. For example, the same system can be the central system, the source system, and a model system.

Central system

A central system directs and tracks activity in your environment. It has an active iSeries Access connection from your graphical client, and it is currently selected as the central system. Its system and inventory provide your view of the Management Central tasks and endpoints.

Endpoint systems

Endpoint systems are the systems that you are managing in your environment. The endpoint systems are controlled by the central system. The endpoint systems were discovered or created on your central system.

Source system

This is the system from which items are sent when performing a task. The source system is the source of the item that is sent. This is the system that you have selected to be the repository for the save files for the fixes that you will distribute to your other systems.

Target system

This is the system to which items are sent when performing a task. The target system is the destination of the item that is sent.

Model system

This is the system that is set up exactly the way you want it with regard to installed fixes. It has the fixes installed that you decided should be installed. You want the other systems that you are managing to have the same fixes installed as the model system. When you use the Compare and Update wizard, you make managing your fixes a lot easier.

Related information

Send and install fixes

Compare and update fixes

Packaging and distribution considerations

When working with the packaging function, you need to keep these considerations in mind.

- The packaging function that does not use a snapshot, stores temporary save files in the QRPLOBJ library. These files are prefixed with QYDS. The packaging function that uses a snapshot stores temporary save files in the QUSRSYS library. (A *snapshot* is a file that contains the data at a particular instant in time for all the files that were selected to be in a package. Creating a snapshot allows you to capture the contents of the selected files at a given time and then distribute that version of the files at a future time.)
- Typically, the QRPLOBJ library is cleaned up when an IPL is done. However, if between IPLs, the temporary storage that is used in QRPLOBJ is a concern, you can use the following commands to view and clear the objects that are in this library.

```
DSPLIB LIB(QRPLOBJ)
WRKOBJPDM LIB(QRPLOBJ) OBJ(*ALL)
WRKOBJPDM LIB(QRPLOBJ) OBJ(QYDS*) OBJTYPE(*FILE) OBJATR(*SAVF)
CLRLIB LIB(QRPLOBJ)
```

- The packaging function allows you to send and restore QSYS objects, QSYS libraries, integrated file system directories, and integrated file system files.
- Database files with referential constraints might not work properly because of sequence dependency. Additionally, database files with referential constraints behave differently depending on whether the database file that is being distributed is being replaced or is a new file. Thus the packaging function does not support sending database files when there is a dependency on the sequence in which the files are restored (such as logical database files).
- The packaging function does not support IASP distributions.
- You cannot use Management Central to distribute CUM tapes/packages.
- Packaging was not designed for very large distributions. A long duration of time maybe required to send very large save files to the target systems. If the size of the files (save file or snapshot size) is over 1 gigabyte, then you should run tests in your environment to determine if the time that is required to perform the distribution to the target systems is acceptable.
As an alternative, you might want to send very large files between systems is to use FTP. This can be faster.
- You cannot distribute the latest i5/OS release, or migrate to a later release using Management Central. LPPs and Base i5/OS Options can be distributed and installed, but not Base i5/OS (QSYS and SLIC).
- You cannot mix QSYS and integrated file system files in a single package. Management Central uses the save/restore function, and is therefore bound by the restrictions that it imposes regarding mixing different file systems.
You can create a package containing QSYS files and another one containing integrated file system files, and then send each package to an endpoint system. But, you cannot combine them into a single package.
As a work around you can place the integrated file system objects into a save file. Then include the save file with your QSYS objects. Next, perform the restore of the save file to integrated file system objects. Or you can use the post command capability in the package definition to do the restore.
- You can refresh the snapshot by right-clicking on the package definition and selecting 'Update Snapshot' from the context menu. However, remember to resend the package to the systems that you want the updates on after you have updated the snapshot.
- Save and restores are performed under the user profile of the user that is signed on to iSeries Navigator. The post distribution command runs under the user profile of the person who started the distribution (the person that is signed on to iSeries Navigator). The job description that is used is QSYS/QYPSJOBDD.

- If you are distributing a QSYS object that you created, then you will need *RWX authority to the QRPLOBJ library on both the source and the target systems. If someone else created the object, then you might need additional authorities. Authority to RSTOBJ is required when you are sending all of the objects from a library.
- If the package that you are distributing is an integrated file system file that you have created, then you do not need any additional authorities.
- In V5R2 and earlier, the package function runs under the C++ server QYPSSRV. In V5R3 and later, the package functions runs under the Java server QYPSJSVR. Thus, if your central system is V5R3 or later, you cannot create a snapshot on a V5R2 or earlier source system. In this special situation the QYPSJSVR server is not able to properly communicate with the V5R2 source QYPSSRV server. Nonetheless, you can still send a package from a V5R2 source system to a target system running V5R3 or later.

Managing users and groups with Management Central

iSeries Navigator can help you as a system administrator to keep track of the users, groups, and their level of privileges on one or more endpoint systems.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

The following list gives you an idea of the many ways in which iSeries Navigator can make your job easier.

Create a user definition

You can create a user definition and then create multiple users across multiple systems based on the definition. First, create user definitions for the types of users on your systems. Then, when a request comes in for a new user, all special authorities, attributes, and other information common to that type of user are already stored in the user definition. You can even specify a command to be run after a user is created from a user definition! If you need assistance in entering or selecting an i5/OS command, you can click **Prompt** to select appropriate parameters and values.

When you create a new user from the user definition, you specify the name for the user, a brief description to help you identify this user in a list of users, and a new password for the user. All other properties of the new user are based on the properties stored in the user definition, unless you choose to change them. You may also select the groups the user should belong to and provide personal information about the user at the time the user is created.

Create, edit, and delete users and groups

You can create, edit, and delete users and groups across multiple endpoint systems or system groups--and even schedule these actions. For example, use the Edit Users function to change the properties for one or more users on the selected endpoint systems or system groups. If you need to change the authority level for several users on multiple systems, or if a user who has access to multiple systems changes his or her name, you can easily edit that information and apply the change to all systems.

When you use iSeries Navigator to delete users, you can select an action to be taken if any of the selected users owns objects on any system from which that user is being deleted. You can click **Scan for Owned Objects** to see what objects the selected users own on the selected endpoint systems or across the selected system groups.

Collect an inventory

You can collect an inventory of the users and groups on one or more endpoint systems, and then view, search, or export that inventory to a PC file. Extensive advanced search capabilities are provided for easy searching. For example, you can search the inventory to see who has Security Officer privileges, as well as query other profile properties. Also, you can sort these inventory

lists by clicking on any column heading. For example, you can group together all users in the inventory who have Security Officer privileges by clicking the Privilege Class heading.

You can perform various actions from the User Inventory list by right-clicking one or more users and selecting an action from the menu. For example, you can delete a user, edit a user, view its properties, or scan for objects owned by a user. You can do similar actions with groups by selecting Group Inventory for an endpoint system.

It is recommended that you schedule collection of users and groups inventory on a recurring basis to keep your central system's inventory current. Changes that you make to the user or group inventory on an endpoint system or system group under Management Central are automatically updated in the current central system's inventory.

Send users and groups

You can send users and groups from one system to multiple endpoint systems or system groups. All the user properties you need are sent to the target systems, including the user name and passwords (LAN server password as well as the i5/OS password), security settings, private authorities, Enterprise Identity Mapping (EIM) associations, and mail options. If the user has an entry in the system distribution directory on the source system, an entry is created (or updated) for that user on the target system.

You can also specify the action to be taken if any user in the list that you are sending already exists on the target system. When you are sending users, you can select not to change the user that already exists, or you can select to update the existing user with the settings from the user you are sending. When you are sending users, you can click Advanced to specify advanced send options. The advanced send options include specifying the mail system for the user and synchronizing the unique identifier of the user on the target system based on the user identifier of the user being sent.

To **send** users or groups from one system to another, you must also have save/restore (*SAVSYS) authority.

Scan for owned objects

You can scan for owned objects to find out what objects a user or group owns across multiple endpoint systems or system groups, and you can even scan for objects owned by multiple users simultaneously.

Synchronize unique identifiers

You can synchronize the unique identifiers of users and groups across multiple endpoint systems to ensure that each of these numbers points to the same user on every system. This is especially important when you are working with systems in a clustering environment or a system with logical partitions. The user identification and group identification numbers are another way of identifying a user or group to a program. For example, the user identification and group identification numbers are used by programming interfaces in the integrated file systems environment.

You can choose to synchronize unique identifiers when you create new users or groups, when you edit users or groups, or when you send users or groups from one system to another. Be sure to keep your user and group inventories current if you are synchronizing unique identifiers when you create or edit users or groups.

Note: All i5/OS special authorities and other authorities that are needed when working with users and groups in the character-based interface are honored when managing users and groups with iSeries Navigator. This includes security administration (*SECADM) privileges, all object (*ALLOBJ) privileges, and authority to the profiles with which you are working. However, even a user with the most restricted set of system privileges (*USER) can view, search, or export a user or group inventory that has been collected by another user with the correct authorities. The user with *USER authority cannot create or delete users, edit existing users, or send users to another system.

Related concepts

“Synchronizing functions” on page 55

You can synchronize the configuration of key functions, such as EIM and Kerberos, across a group of endpoint systems.

Related information

Scenario: Configuring the Management Central servers for single sign-on

Propagating system settings from the model system (System A) to System B and System C

Sharing with other users in Management Central

Sharing saves you time, makes system administration easier, and reduces the number of redundant tasks you need to do. As of V5R4, you can now share system monitors and system events.

Sharing allows you to use (or share) the same items: monitors, monitor events, system groups, definitions, and system administration tasks. You can even set your user preferences to share all of the new tasks that you create. For example you might give a user special authority (administered under Host Applications in Application Administration) to view all tasks, definitions, job monitors, message monitors, file monitors, activity monitors, system monitors, system events, and system groups under Management Central in the iSeries Navigator window.

Only the owner of an item can change the level of sharing. The owner can specify any of the following levels of sharing:

None	Other users cannot view this item. Only the owner of the item or a user with special authority administered under Host Applications in Application Administration can view this item. Users with this special authority, called Management Central Administration Access, can view all tasks, definitions, job monitors, message monitors, system monitors, system events, and system groups under Management Central in the iSeries Navigator window.
Read-Only	Other users can view this item and use it. Other users can create a new item based on this one and make changes to the new one as needed. However, other users cannot delete or change this item in any way. If you are the owner of a monitor and have specified actions (such as opening the event log window or sounding an alarm on the PC), these actions occur for all users of the monitor whenever a threshold is triggered or reset. The other users cannot change these actions. If the item (a task or a monitor) is running, other users cannot stop it.
Controlled	Other users can start and stop this task or monitor. Only the owner can delete the item or change any properties of this item, including the level of sharing. Other users can also view this item and use it to create a new item based on this one. If you are the owner of a monitor and have specified actions (such as opening the event log window or sounding an alarm on the PC), these actions occur for all users of the monitor whenever a threshold is triggered or reset. The other users cannot change these actions. Any actions that are associated with running a monitor that was created by another user (the owner) runs under the authority of the owner. Therefore, as the owner, you might be sharing a monitor with someone who does not have the same level of authority as you.
Full	Other users can change and delete this definition or system group. Other users can also view this item and use it to create a new definition or system group.

Uses for sharing objects and tasks

What you can do with sharing depends on the needs of your work environment. Consider these examples:

- **You can share job monitors, message monitors, system monitors, and file monitors.**

When you share monitors, others can use the monitors that you set up to measure the monitored activity on the systems in your network. If you choose **Read-Only** sharing, others can open the monitor and its event log, and they can view the properties of the monitor. If you choose **Controlled** sharing, others can also start or stop the monitor. The level of sharing that you specify when you create a monitor also applies to any events that are logged when a threshold is triggered or reset. You can change the level of sharing for events after they have been logged.

- **You can share system groups.**

When you share system groups, other users can view the system groups and use them to perform authorized actions. Unless you specify **Full** sharing, you control the endpoint systems in the system group for all authorized users. This ensures that the system group is always up to date. Suppose you created a system group called "West Coast Systems." If you chose to share that group, all system operators can use that system group to work with the West Coast systems. If you specify **Full** sharing, other users may update the contents of that group.

- **You can share definitions.**

Part of your job might include maintaining a "run book" of commonly used commands. You can share the command definitions in that run book to ensure that the commands your system operators run are accurate. If you need to make a change to one of those commands, you only need to do it once. Your users can share that one set of accurate commands.

You can also share package definitions, product definitions, and user definitions. By sharing definitions, you save other users the time it takes to create their own definitions.

- **You can share tasks.**

Tasks are long-running actions in iSeries Navigator. You can share any actions that have been created and allow users to see the status of tasks. For example, suppose you needed to install 50 fixes on a system group containing 50 systems. If you shared that task, you can start the task and then go home while letting the second shift operators see the status on their PC.

- **You can use global sharing to share all tasks.**

Use global sharing to specify the level of sharing for all your system administration tasks -- None, Read-Only, or Controlled sharing. You access global sharing through the User Preferences window by right-clicking on Management Central. When you specify a value other than None, the sharing value applies to all future tasks that are created with iSeries Navigator on this PC. Existing tasks are not affected. For example, suppose you are in an environment where you are part of a five-person team that works around the clock. If you chose to globally share your tasks at the Controlled level, your team can see what you did and work with the tasks you started -- even when you are not there.

Synchronizing date and time values

Management Central provides a convenient way for you to synchronize date and time values across your network.

To synchronize the date and time values across your network, select your endpoint systems or system groups whose date and time values you want to update from the **Endpoint Systems** list under Management Central in iSeries Navigator. Then, right-click any selected system and select **System Values** → **Synchronize Date and Time**. Specify a model system that has the most accurate date and time values.

The date and time system values that are updated on the target systems include system date (QDAYOFWEEK, QDATE, QDAY, QMONTH, QYEAR), time of day (QTIME, QHOUR, QMINUTE, QSECOND), and time zone (QTIMZON). To verify that a time adjustment is being made, select the endpoint system from the list under My Connections (or your active environment) in iSeries Navigator. Then, go to **Configuration and Service** → **Time Management** → **Time Adjustment** to view the current time adjustment.

The time used from the model system is the software clock time rather than the QTIME system value. The software clock time is the same as the QTIME system value except when the SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol) client is started on the model system. When SNTP is running on the model system, the software clock is synchronized to the time server specified in the SNTP configuration. For more information about configuring SNTP, see Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP).

You can choose to synchronize the time without changing the time zone, or synchronize both the time and the time zone with those on the model system.

When a system changes to or from Daylight Saving Time (DST), the GMT offset (QUTCOffset) system value is automatically updated from the GMT offset attribute of the time zone (QTIMZON) system value.

Related information

Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP)

Synchronizing functions

You can synchronize the configuration of key functions, such as EIM and Kerberos, across a group of endpoint systems.

You select a model endpoint system and a set of target endpoint systems, and then use the Synchronize Functions wizard to duplicate the model system's Kerberos or EIM configurations (or both) on the specified target systems. Synchronizing these functions from the model system saves you time by eliminating the task of individually configuring each function on each target system. Synchronizing your EIM configurations allows you to create EIM associations between user identities within your network. This in turn allows a user who has different profiles on different systems to work with distributed applications that use Kerberos authentication without having to sign on to each of these systems individually.

For example, John Smith may be JSMITH on system CHICAGO1, JOHNSMITH on system DETROIT1, and JRSMITH on system DENVER. If EIM and Kerberos are configured on all three systems, and all three profiles are associated with the same EIM identifier, John Smith can use Management Central to manage these V5R3 systems. For example, he can run commands on these systems, and monitor performance, jobs, and other resources on these systems. John Smith can also access other services and applications that use EIM and Kerberos authentication without the need for multiple passwords to these different systems across the enterprise.

Using Kerberos and EIM together in this way is referred to as *single signon* because it eliminates the need to provide multiple user names and passwords for distributed applications. Single signon benefits users, administrators, and application developers by enabling an easier password management system across multiple platforms without the need to change underlying security policies. See Single signon for details on how to enable single signon by using network authentication service and Enterprise Identity Mapping (EIM).

Note: If the SNTP box is checked then a TCP job QTOTNTP should be running on the endpoint. If it is not running then Management Central will use information from the model system. If SNTP is checked and the client QTOTNTP job is running then you should not run multiple Time Synchronization tasks within one polling interval of the SNTP client. You can view the SNTP polling interval at **My Connections** → **system** → **TCP/IP** → **Right-click SNTP** → **Properties** → **Client tab** .

Related concepts

"Managing users and groups with Management Central" on page 51

iSeries Navigator can help you as a system administrator to keep track of the users, groups, and their level of privileges on one or more endpoint systems.

Related information

Scenario: Configuring the Management Central servers for single sign-on

Propagating system settings from the model system (System A) to System B and System C

Scheduling tasks or jobs with Management Central scheduler

iSeries Navigator provides two different tools you can use to schedule tasks or jobs: an integrated scheduler (the Management Central scheduler) and the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Management Central scheduler

The Management Central scheduler helps you to organize when you want your tasks to occur. You have the option of choosing to perform a task immediately or choosing a later time.

You can use the Management Central scheduler to schedule a variety of tasks. For example, you can automate the process of collecting an inventory (such as hardware, software, or fixes) on whichever day fits your operating schedule. You might schedule such a collection to occur every Saturday night at 10 p.m. You can also schedule to clean up the save files and cover letters of the fixes from your systems on the first of every month. Or you might want to install a set of fixes once.

To schedule a later time to perform a task, click **Schedule** from any window in which the button is displayed. Your scheduling information is stored on the central system and submitted from there. No scheduling function is needed at the endpoint system. You can then view the scheduled job in one of the Scheduled Tasks containers. You can also view the job by using Work with job schedule entries (WRKJOBSCDE) command on the character-based interface. Scheduled jobs have a job name of Qxxxxxxx where xxxxxxxx will be a hex number such as FFFFFFF08.

Important: Do not use the Work with Job Schedule Entries (WRKJOBSCDE) command to alter or delete a scheduled job if that job was scheduled using the Management Central Scheduler or the Advanced Job Scheduler. If the job is altered or deleted by using WRKJOBSCDE, Management Central is not notified of the changes. The task might not run as expected, and error messages can appear in the Management Central server job logs.

The following scheduling options are available from the Management Central scheduler:

- **Daily**
The task runs every day at the specified time beginning on the specified date.
- **Weekly**
The task runs every week at the specified time beginning on the specified date. You may either accept the default (today's date) or specify the day of the week when you want the task to run.
- **Monthly**
The task runs every month at the specified time beginning on the specified date. You may either accept the default (today's date) or specify a day of the month (1-31), First day, or Last day.

You can schedule any task for which a **Schedule** button is available. For example, you can schedule a specific time to collect inventory. Tasks that run only once will be removed from the Scheduled Tasks view when they are run. They then appear in a Task Activity folder. (If you want full calendar management, you should use the Advanced Job Scheduler.)

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

What you can do with Management Central scheduler

Using the scheduler function gives you the flexibility to do your work when it is convenient for you. In addition, you can use the Management Central scheduler to do almost any task in Management Central. For example, you can schedule when to do any of the following tasks:

- Run commands on selected endpoint systems and system groups
- Collect inventory on selected endpoint systems and system groups
- Collect system values inventory on selected endpoint systems and system groups; then compare and update system values to those on a model system
- Create, delete, edit, and send users and groups across multiple endpoint systems
- Send fixes or packages of files and folders to selected endpoint systems and system groups
- Start installing fixes, uninstall fixes, or install fixes permanently
- Delete the save files and cover letters for selected fixes on selected endpoint systems and system groups

- Start and stop Collection Services on selected endpoint systems and system groups

You can schedule a task to run once, in which case the task runs a single time beginning at the specified date and time. Tasks that run only once are removed from the Scheduled Tasks container when they run. They then appear in a Task Activity container.

Advanced Job Scheduler

The Advanced Job Scheduler is a separate licensed program (5722-JS1) that you can install and use to schedule tasks and jobs. This scheduling tool provides more calendar features and offers greater control over scheduled events. If you have Advanced Job Scheduler installed, click the **Schedule** button from any iSeries Navigator window to schedule tasks and jobs.

After you have installed the plug-in, an Advanced Job Scheduler container displays under Management Central. Tasks that are scheduled with the Advanced Job Scheduler are in this container.

You can also use the Work with Jobs using Job Scheduler (WRKJOBJS) command to display jobs scheduled with the Advanced Job Scheduler. However, do not delete scheduled Management Central tasks or change the owner from the WRKJOBJS display. If the job is altered or deleted by using WRKJOBJS, Management Central is not notified of the changes. The task might not run as expected, and error messages can appear in the Management Central server job logs.

To find more information about installing and using this tool, see the Advanced Job Scheduler topic.

Related information

Managing job scheduling

Advanced Job Scheduler

The Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program (5722-JS1) is a powerful scheduler that allows unattended job processing 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. This scheduling tool provides more calendar features and offers greater control over scheduled events than the Management Central scheduler. You can also view job completion history and manage notification of a job's status.

If you want to schedule jobs on several systems in your network, the product must be installed on each of your systems. If you want to use the Advanced Job Scheduler in iSeries Navigator (and in Management Central), then you must install the client plugin from a system that has the Advanced Job Scheduler installed.

However, it is not necessary to install the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program on each endpoint system in your Management Central network. When you install the Advanced Job Scheduler on the central system, jobs or tasks that you define on an endpoint system will gather job information that is needed from the central system. You must set up all job definition information on the central system.

If systems in your network have the Advanced Job Scheduler installed locally, you can schedule tasks outside of the Management Central network. Under **My Connections** in iSeries Navigator, you have access to the Advanced Job Scheduler on that local system when you expand **Work Management**.

Note: For ordering information, see the Job Scheduler for i5/OS  web site.

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless is a software application that allows you to access Advanced Job Scheduler on multiple Internet-accessible devices, such as an Internet-ready telephone, PDA Web browser or PC Web browser.

The wireless feature of Advanced Job Scheduler resides on your system, where Advanced Job Scheduler is installed, and allows you to access your jobs and activity, as well as send messages to recipients on your system, and stop and start the Advanced Job Scheduler monitor. Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless allows each user to customize the settings and preferences of their browsing experience. For instance, a user can show activity, display jobs, and customize the jobs they display.

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless allows you to access your jobs when you are normally unable to access a System i terminal or emulator. Connect to the Internet with your mobile device and enter the URL for the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless servlet. This launches a menu that gives you real-time access to Advanced Job Scheduler.

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless works on two types of devices. A Wireless Markup Language (WML) device is an Internet-ready cellular phone. A Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) is a PDA or PC Web browser. Throughout this topic, the different devices are referred to as WML and HTML.

Scheduling jobs with Advanced Job Scheduler

Follow these instructions to manage the Advanced Job Scheduler. You first need to install the licensed program, and then complete the tasks to customize the Advanced Job Scheduler. Finally, the remainder of the tasks allow you to work with and manage this scheduler.

What's new in Advanced Job Scheduler for V5R4

Several enhancements have been made to the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Add multiple commands to a scheduled task

- A command list is a stored set of instructions that Advanced Job Scheduler uses to process Management Central jobs. You can now add a series of commands to the scheduled Management Central task and control the run sequence of these commands. In the past you could only schedule one Management Central task (you could schedule one job to collect inventory, then another job to install fixes, and another one to run commands). Now you can create one Advanced Job Scheduler job that does all those activities.

When scheduling a task, you have the option to create a new scheduled job, create a new scheduled job based on an existing scheduled job, or add the task to an existing job. CL commands can also be added to Management Central scheduled tasks. For instance, to delay the job between tasks you can use the Delay Job (DLYJOB) command.

Tasks are processed on the endpoint system that was selected when the task was created. However, all CL commands are processed on the Central system. Each task must complete before the next task or CL command in the list will process.

After you click the **Schedule** button for a Management Central task, the next window prompts you to specify whether you want to create a new job, create a new job based on another job, or add to an existing job.

The **Command** field is located on the **Scheduled Job Properties - General** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Scheduled Jobs** → **Right-click a job** → **Properties**)

Notification Banner control

- When you distribute spooled files by using Report Distribution, you can now choose from a list of items and have them print in a large font on the banner page of the new spooled file. The default items are Job name and Spooled file name. You can select up to 2 banner items to print large.

The **Available banner items** field is located on the **Notification Properties** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Right-click Notification** → **Properties**)

Add send e-mail menu option on system

- This new menu option allows you to use the Advanced Job Scheduler to send an e-mail. When you select this menu item, the New E-Mail Message window appears. This is the same window that appears when you click **My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notifications** → **Right-click E-mail** → **New E-mail**.

My Connections → **Right-click a server** → **Send e-mail via AJS**

Distribute reports via the Basic Operations container

- The **Distribute Reports** window provides you with a place to manually distribute spooled files that are generated by a user job that is using a report distribution list. The job can be a job started by Advanced Job Scheduler or manually by a user. You will be prompted for a Report Distribution List. The Report Distribution List is a list of spooled files and the recipients to whom the spooled files will be delivered.

My Connections → **server** → **Basic Operations** → **Jobs** → **Right-click a job** → **Distribute Reports**

Availability schedule for e-mail recipients

- The availability schedule is the schedule for which the recipient is available to receive notification messages. You can select Always available, blank (never available) or a schedule option that was previously defined in the **Advanced Job Scheduler - Schedules** properties window.

The **Availability schedule** field is located on the **Recipient Properties - Email** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notifications** → **Recipients** → **Right-click a recipient name** → **Properties**)

Work Flow Manager

- The Work Flow Manager is a new tool that lets you define units of work that can consist of a combination of automated and manual steps. The units of work can then be scheduled or started manually. With various notification check points, users can be notified when steps have started, completed, did not run by a specific time, and exceeded the run limit. Each step may have predecessor and successor jobs. Predecessor jobs for a step must complete before the step can be automatically or manually completed. After a step has completed, successor jobs are set to run. It is common to specify predecessor jobs that are the same as the successor jobs of the previous step. This causes the step to wait until the jobs complete before notifying of the step's completion.

A good candidate for using the Advanced Job Scheduler Work Flow Manager is payroll processing. The payroll process consists of manual steps such as inputting time cards, validating reports, and printing and disbursing checks. The automatic steps can clear the batch work files, process time card input, run the payroll updates, and create the reports and checks.

My Connections → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Work Flow Manager**

Integrated file system Object Resource Dependency

- The **Resource Dependencies** window displays information about a specific job's resource dependencies, including a list of dependencies, the requirements needed before continuing to run a job, and the time to wait before resetting a job, as well as allows you to add, remove, or view the properties of a particular resource dependency. New to V5R4 you can indicate if this dependency object is an integrated file system and specify the path.

My Connections → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Scheduled Jobs** → **Right Click a job** → **Resource Dependencies** → **Create a new dependency type object**

Page Selection for notification spool file attachments

- Page Selection allows you to specify selection information based on text and its location within each page of a spooled file. You can specify that the text must exist at a specific location on each page or anywhere on the page. You can also subset the spooled file by selecting a page range.

The Page Selection function can be found at **My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Report Distribution List** → **Right-click a list** → **Properties** → **Click a spooled file** → **Click Properties**

Add option to not reset held jobs

- Currently there is a possible performance impact when jobs that are scheduled to run periodically are held. Each time the scheduled date and time is reached for a held job, the Advanced Job Scheduler server job determines if the job is still held, and if so, calculates the next date and time the held job should run. New for V5R4, you can suppress this calculation by making sure that the **Reset held jobs** field is unchecked. When the **Reset held jobs** field is unchecked, the next time the date and time is reached for a held job, the scheduled date and time fields are cleared, and no further processing activity is triggered on the held job. When you release the job, the server then calculates the next date and time the job should run. Using the **Reset held jobs** field applies to all jobs defined using the Advanced Job Scheduler.

The **Reset held jobs** field is located on the **Advanced Job Scheduler Properties - General** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Right-click Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Properties**)

Installing the Advanced Job Scheduler

The first time that you connected to your Management Central server, iSeries Navigator asked you if you wanted to install the Advanced Job Scheduler. If you chose no and want to install it now, you can do so by using the Install Plug-Ins feature of iSeries Navigator.

1. From your **iSeries Navigator** window, click **File** from the menu bar.
2. Click **Install Options** → **Install Plug-Ins**.
3. Click the source system where the Advanced Job Scheduler is installed and click **OK**. Check with the system administrator if you are not sure what source system to use.
4. Enter your i5/OS **User ID** and **Password**, and click **OK**.
5. Click **Advanced Job Scheduler** from the Plug-in selection list.
6. Click **Next** and then click **Next** again.
7. Click **Finish** to complete and exit the setup.

Results

You have now installed the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Locate the scheduler:

About this task

To locate the scheduler, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Management Central**.
2. Click **Scan Now** in response to the message that iSeries Navigator has detected a new component. You might see this message again when you access systems from the **My Connections** container.
3. Expand **My Connections** → of the system that has the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program installed → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler**.

Results

After you have finished this preliminary work with the Advanced Job Scheduler, you are ready to set up the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Setting up the Advanced Job Scheduler

After you have installed the Advanced Job Scheduler, you need to configure it. After you have finished this preliminary work, you are ready to begin scheduling jobs.

Assigning the general properties:

You can follow these instructions to assign the general properties used by Advanced Job Scheduler. You can specify how long to retain activity and log entries for the Advanced Job Scheduler, as well as the period that jobs will not be allowed to run.

About this task

You can specify the working days that jobs will process, and whether an application is required for each scheduled job. If you have a notification product installed, you can also set up the command that will be used to send a notification when a job completes or fails or you can use the Send Distribution using Job Scheduler (SNDDSTJS) command to notify a recipient

You can specify how long to retain activity records for jobs, as well as the period that jobs will not be allowed to run. You can specify the working days that jobs are allowed to process, and whether an application is required for each submitted job.

You can have a notification product installed which allows you to receive a notification (message) when a job ends. You can define the notification command that will send a notification when a job completes or fails or you can use the Send Distribution using Job Scheduler (SNDDSTJS) command to notify a recipient.

To set up the general properties for the Advanced Job Scheduler, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Specify the **Activity Retention**. The activity retention is how long you want to retain the activity records for jobs. The possible values are 1 to 999 days or occurrences. Click **Days** to specify if you want to keep activity for a certain number of days, or click **Occurrences per job** if you want to keep activity for a certain number of occurrences per job.
4. Specify the **Log retention**. The log retention specifies, in days, how long you want to retain Advanced Job Scheduler log entries.
5. You can specify a **Reserved period**. Jobs will not run during this time.
6. Specify the working days from the list. If a day is selected, it is designated as a working day and can be referenced when scheduling jobs.
7. Click **Application required for scheduled job** to designate whether an application is required for each scheduled job. **Applications** are jobs that have been grouped together for processing. This cannot be selected if existing jobs do not contain an application. If you choose to have an application required for certain jobs, go to working with applications.
8. Click **Calendars** to set up the scheduling, holiday, and fiscal calendars to use, set up holiday calendar, and set up fiscal calendar.
9. Click **Base periodic frequency on start time** to base the next run time on the start time for jobs that are scheduled to run periodically. For instance, a job is to run every 30 minutes, starting at 8:00 am. (For a job to run around the clock, specify 7:59 am as the ending time.) The job runs for a total of 20 minutes. With this field checked, the job runs at 8:00 am, 8:30 am, 9:00 am, and so on. If this field is not checked, the job runs at 8:00 am, 8:50 am, 9:40 am, 10:30 am, and so on.

10. Click **Reset held jobs** to continue to recalculate and display the next date and time a held job runs.
11. Specify a **Start time of day**. This is the time of day that you consider starts a new day. All jobs that are specified to use this time of day will have their job date changed to the previous day if the time the job starts is before the **Start time of day** field.
12. Specify a **Job monitor user**. This field specifies the name of the user profile to use as the owner of the monitor job. All jobs that have **Current user** specified use the user profile of the monitor job. The monitor job's default user profile is QIJS.
13. In the **Notification command** field, you can specify a command. Use the Send Distribution using Job Scheduler Notification (SNDDSTJS) command supplied with the system or a command specified by your notification software. The SNDDSTJS command uses the Advanced Job Scheduler notification function. The designated recipients can receive messages for normal and abnormal completions of job scheduled entries.

Specifying permission levels:

This information explains how to specify permission levels for jobs, functions of the product, and provide new job default permissions.

About this task

You can specify permission levels for jobs, functions of the product, and provide new job default permissions to be associated with each Job Control/Application. The permissions for a job allow you to grant or deny access to the following actions: submit, manage, permission, display, copy, update, or delete. You can also grant or deny access to individual functions of the product such as Work with Schedule Calendars, Send Reports, and Add Job.

Default permission levels are transferred to new jobs when they are added. In which case, the system will transfer the New Job permissions based on the application specified within the job definition. If no application is used, it will transfer the *SYSTEM New Job permissions.

Specifying permission levels for functions of the product:

About this task

To specify permission levels for functions of the product, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click **Permissions**.
4. Select a function and click **Properties**.
5. On the Function Permissions Properties window, edit the permission level as necessary. You can grant or deny access to the public or specific users.

Specifying permission levels to jobs:

About this task

To specify permission levels to jobs, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
3. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Permissions**.
4. On the Permissions Properties window, edit the permission level as necessary. You can grant or deny access to the public or specific users. In addition, you can specify submit, manage, permission, display, copy, update, or delete permissions.

Specifying default permission levels:

About this task

To specify default permission levels for new jobs associated with a Job Control/Application, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click **Job Controls/Applications**.
4. Select a job control or application from the list and click **New Job Permissions**.
5. On the Function Permissions Properties window, edit the permission level as necessary. You can grant or deny access to the public or specific users. In addition, you can specify submit, manage, permission, display, copy, update, or delete permissions.

Setting up a scheduling calendar:

These instructions show how to set up a calendar of selected days for scheduling a job or job group. This calendar can specify the dates to be used for scheduling a job, or it can be used in conjunction with other schedules.

About this task

A **scheduling calendar** is a calendar of selected days that you can use for scheduling a job or job group. You can display scheduling calendars, add a new scheduling calendar, add a new scheduling calendar based on an existing one, or remove an existing calendar, provided it is not in use by a currently scheduled job.

You can select a calendar and display its properties to make changes. When you select a calendar, the details of the calendar are displayed under Details.

To set up a scheduling calendar, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the General page, click **Calendars**.
4. On the Scheduling Calendars page, click **New**.
5. Specify a **Name**.
6. In the **Description** field, specify text that describes the calendar.
7. Choose a **Reference calendar** if applicable. This is a calendar that was previously set up, and its properties will be applied to the new calendar as if you merged the two calendars. You will not have reference calendars if this is your first time using the Advanced Job Scheduler.
8. Select the dates that you want to include on your calendar. You must specify whether each date you have selected is for the current year or for every year in the **Selected date** field, before you can add another date to the calendar. Otherwise, any date you select will be deselected when you click a different date.
9. Specify if you want certain days of the week to be included on the calendar.

Setting up a holiday calendar:

These instructions show how to set up a calendar for days that you do not want to allow processing for a scheduled job. Alternate days can be specified for each exception day, or processing can be skipped completely for that day.

About this task

A **holiday calendar** is an exception calendar for days that you do not want to process an Advanced Job Scheduler job. Alternate days can be specified for each exception day that you specify in a holiday calendar. You can display holiday calendars, add a new holiday calendar, add a new holiday calendar based on an existing one, or remove an existing calendar, provided it is not in use by a currently scheduled job.

Predefined schedules can be used in holiday calendars. You can create a schedule THIRDFRI that has a frequency of the third Friday of each month. When you use THIRDFRI in a holiday calendar, you cause all jobs that use this holiday calendar to not run on the third Friday of each month. One or more schedules can be used in a holiday calendar. Dates that are generated by the schedule will be shown on the calendar with a black border.

You can select a calendar and display its properties to make changes. When you select a calendar, the details of the calendar are displayed under Details.

Setting up a holiday calendar:

About this task

To set up a holiday calendar, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and select **Properties**.
3. On the General page, click **Calendars**.
4. Click the **Holiday Calendars** tab.
5. Click **New** and type a name for the calendar.
6. In the **Description** field, specify text to describe the calendar.
7. Choose a **Reference calendar** if applicable. This is a calendar that was previously set up, and its properties will be applied to the new calendar as if you merged the two calendars. You will not have reference calendars if this is your first time using the Advanced Job Scheduler.
8. Select the dates that you want to include on your calendar. You must specify whether each date you have selected is for the current year or for every year in the **Selected date** field, before you can add another date to the calendar. Otherwise, any date you select will be deselected when you click a different date.
9. Select an alternate day for the job to run. You can choose the previous working day, next working day, a specific date or not at all. To select a specific date, click **Specific alternate date**, and type the date.
10. Select specific days of the week to be included on the calendar.

Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar:

About this task

To add a holiday calendar to a scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the General page, click **Calendars**.
4. On the Holiday calendar page, select the holiday calendar and click **Properties**.
5. From the lower left hand corner of the tab, click **Schedules**.
6. Select the appropriate schedule and click **Add**.
7. To change the **Alternate day**, right-click the schedule from the **Selected Schedules** list and click the correct **Alternate Day**.

Setting up a fiscal calendar:

If you want to divide the fiscal year into periods other than months, follow these steps to set up a fiscal calendar of selected days for scheduling a job or job group.

About this task

A *fiscal calendar* is a calendar of selected days that you can use for scheduling a job or job group. Use a fiscal calendar to define a fiscal calendar that is unique to your business. You can specify the start and end dates for each period in the fiscal year.

To set up a fiscal calendar, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the General window, click **Calendars**.
4. On the Fiscal Calendars page, click **New**.
5. Specify a **Name**.
6. In the **Description** field, type in text to describe the calendar.
7. Click **New** on the Fiscal Calendar Properties window to create a new entry.
8. Select a period and specify the start and end dates. You can specify up to 13 periods.
9. Click **OK** to save the fiscal calendar entry.
10. Repeat steps 7 through 9 as necessary.

Specifying a mail server to use for notification:

A mail server is required if you want to send e-mail notification messages.

About this task

To set up the notification properties, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Notification** and click **Properties**.
4. Specify how many days to store messages. Specify a number in the **Message retention** field.
5. Specify an **Outgoing mail server (SMTP)**. For example, SMTP.yourserver.com.
6. Specify a **Port**. The default port number is 25.
7. Specify an e-mail address in the **Reply address** field. All reply messages are sent to this address.
8. Select **Yes** or **No** in the **Log send activity** field. Send activity is used for problem determination.
9. Specify the **Number of banner pages** allowed. This is used in Report Distribution.
10. Click **OK** to save the notification properties.

Setting up multiple scheduling environments:

You can set up scheduling environments on the same system. By doing this, the original data library can act as the active data library and the copied data library can be used for testing. Thus you have two scheduling environments, one for testing and one that is the actual. In addition, the test data library can serve as a backup if there is a system failure on the original system. This feature gives you added protection if you create an error in the original data library because you have a backup copy of the data library.

About this task

There are several reasons why you might want to set up multiple scheduling environments. You might want to have a production version and a test version of the product running at the same time. This type of environment allows you to test various job schedules before actually using them in the data library on the production system. Or you might have a system that is the backup for one or more other systems in which you can use a data-mirroring product to replicate the Advanced Job Scheduler data library (QUSRIJS) from the source system into a library named differently. In this case, the data library is active until there is a problem with the source system.

A scheduling environment is a duplicate of the QUSRIJS library except with different data. For instance you can have another data library named QUSRIJSTST with all the objects as QUSRIJS. Each are considered data libraries.

To set up a multiple scheduling environment, follow these steps:

1. Obtain a data library from a system

To create a data library, you need to obtain a data library from a system. The following are three ways that you can obtain a data library from the system:

- Save the data library from a system and restore it onto the production system.
- Duplicate the data library on the current system using the Copy Library (CPYLIB) command.
- Mirror a data library on the test system. These systems should be running the same version release level.

Note: The copied, restored, or mirrored data library uses a different name than the original system.

2. Assign data libraries to users

After you obtain a test data library, add the data library to the Advanced Job Scheduler's properties and assign users to the data library. Therefore, when a user uses the Advanced Job Scheduler, the changes that the user makes are stored in the data library assigned to the user.

3. Copy jobs from test data library to actual data library (optional)

If you are using a data library for testing purposes, you might want to copy the jobs from the test data library to the actual data library in use. You only need to do this if you restored or copied a data library in step 1 and you have jobs that you want to move to the actual data library in use. You do not need to do this if you mirrored a data library from the actual system to a test system.

To copy jobs from one system's data library to another, use the Copy Job using Job Scheduler (CPYJOBJS) command. For more information about the specific parameters for this command, see the online help.

Assigning data libraries to users:

The data library stores any changes that the user does using the Advanced Job Scheduler. A data library contains all the objects found in the QUSRIJS library. You can have an unlimited number of data libraries.

About this task

To assign data libraries to users, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the Data Libraries window, click **Add** to specify a data library. The data libraries that are listed are available to all users on the system.
4. On the Users window, click **Add** to add new users.
5. Specify a name.
6. Select a data library.

7. Click **OK** to add the user.
8. Click **Properties** to change the data library assigned to a user.

Results

With data libraries, you can set up multiple scheduling environments.

Managing the Advanced Job Scheduler

This information shows how to schedule jobs using the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Creating and scheduling a job:

You can schedule a job and specify the commands that are associated with the job. You can also specify starting and ending commands to run a special version of a scheduled job.

About this task

To create and schedule a new scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Scheduled Jobs** and click **New Scheduled Job**.

Creating and scheduling a job group:

You can set up and schedule a series of jobs that run consecutively in a specified order. Jobs within a job group require completion before the next job is submitted for processing.

About this task

Job groups are jobs that are grouped together to run consecutively in the order specified. A normal completion is required for each job in the group before the next job in the group is submitted for processing. If any job in the group does not complete normally, the processing stops for that group.

To create and schedule a new job group, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Job Groups** and click **New Job Group**.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the new job group.

Predefined schedules:

You can create schedules that contain information needed to schedule a job or calculate exception dates within a holiday calendar.

About this task

For instance, you can create an ENDOFWEEK schedule that contains the day of the week to run, along with any additional calendars. The ENDOFWEEK schedule can then be used by all the jobs that match that scheduling frequency. You can access this feature only through iSeries Navigator.

You can use those same predefined schedules that are used in a job with your holiday calendars. You can create a schedule THIRDFRI that has a frequency of the third Friday of each month. When you use

THIRDFRI in a holiday calendar, you cause all jobs that use this holiday calendar to not run on the third Friday of each month. You can use one or more schedules in a holiday calendar. Dates that are generated by the schedule will be shown on the calendar with a black border.

Setting up a predefined schedule:

To set up a predefined schedule, follow these steps.

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the Schedules tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the schedule.
5. Type a description for the schedule.
6. Select the frequency and dates that you want to include in your schedule, as well as any additional calendars.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the new schedule.

Adding a schedule to a scheduled job:

To add a schedule to a scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
4. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Properties**.
5. Click the Schedule tab.
6. From the upper right hand corner of the tab, select the appropriate Schedule option.

Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar:

A holiday calendar is an exception calendar for days that you do not want to process an Advanced Job Scheduler job. Alternate days can be specified for each exception day that you specify in a holiday calendar.

About this task

To add a schedule to a holiday calendar, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the **General** page, click **Holiday Calendars**.
4. On the Holiday Calendars page, select the holiday calendar and click **Properties**.
5. From the lower left hand corner of the tab, click **Schedules**.
6. Select the appropriate schedule and click **Add**.
7. To change the **Alternate day**, right-click the schedule from the **Selected Schedules** list and click the correct **Alternate Day**.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information.

Creating a temporary scheduled job:

At times it might be necessary to run a scheduled job now or in the future in addition to its normal schedule. Use the Submit Job using Job Scheduler (SBMJOBJS) command, option 7 from Work with Jobs display, or the **Run** option from iSeries Navigator. It might also be necessary to process only a portion of the commands in the command list when setting up this special run.

About this task

The SBJOBJS command allows you to specify the Starting and Ending command sequences. For instance, JOBA has 5 commands, sequences 10 through 50. You can specify on the SBJOBJS command to start with sequence 20 and end with sequence 40. This bypasses sequence 10 and 50.

iSeries Navigator allows you to select a starting command within the command list and an ending command.

To run a special version of a scheduled job with iSeries Navigator, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
4. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Run**.
5. Specify whether to run the job now or in the future.
6. Select the starting and ending commands.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the new job.

Scheduling job dependencies:

The Advanced Job Scheduler allows you to set up dependencies that reflect how jobs are processed in your environment. Dependencies determine when a job or group of jobs can run. You can select to have all dependencies met before a job can run, or you can have at least one dependency met before the job can run.

About this task

Dependencies include the following:

- **Job dependencies**

Job dependencies refer to predecessor and successor relationships for jobs. Predecessor jobs are those that must run before the successor job will run. A successor job is a job that runs after all the predecessor jobs have been processed. There can be multiple successor jobs for a single predecessor job as well as multiple predecessor jobs for a single successor job. In addition, you can specify that a dependent job be skipped if its predecessors and successors run on a day that the dependent job is not scheduled to run.

- **Active dependencies**

Active dependencies are lists of jobs that cannot be active when the selected job is to be submitted. If any of the jobs are active, the Advanced Job Scheduler will not let the specified job run. The selected job will be delayed until all the jobs in the list are inactive.

- **Resource dependencies**

Resource dependencies are based on several things. Each type that follows describes the areas that are checked. Following are the types of resource dependencies:

File The job is dependent on the existence or non-existence of a file and whether it meets the specified allocation level to be processed. It can also check whether records are present before

the job is processed. For instance, JOBA can be set up so that it will only run when file ABC exists, and the file can be allocated exclusively and if records are present in the file.

Object

The job is dependent on the existence or non-existence of a QSYS type object and whether it meets the specified allocation level to be processed. For instance, JOBA can be set up so that it will only run when data area XYZ exists. The job can also be dependent on the existence or non-existence of an object found in the integrated file system. If the dependency is based on any object in the path, end the integrated file system path with a forward slash '/'.

Hardware configuration

The job is dependent on the existence or non-existence of a hardware configuration and its status to be processed. For instance, JOBA can be set up so that it will only run when device TAP01 exists and has a status of Available.

Network file

The job is dependent on the status of a network file in order to be processed.

Subsystem

The job is dependent on the status of a subsystem in order to be processed.

To work with job dependencies, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs**.
4. Right-click the **Job Name** whose dependencies you want to work with.
5. Select one of the following: **Job Dependencies**, **Active Dependencies** or **Resource Dependencies**. Refer to the online help for more information.

The Work Flow Manager:

The Work Flow Manager allows you define units of work that consist of automated or manual steps. These units of work can then be scheduled or run interactively. The Work Flow Manager is located in the Advanced Job Scheduler container in the iSeries Navigator interface.

Each step within the work flow can have one or more predecessor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs and one or more successor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs. When a work flow starts, the first step is flagged to run. When it completes, the next step is flagged to run, and so on.

The following are some additional considerations when using the Work Flow Manager:

- You can manually start a work flow at any step. When you do so, you bypass all previous steps in the work flow.
- Automatic steps complete after all prior steps have completed. This includes all predecessor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs.
- After a step completes, the successor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs are flagged to run.
- Manual steps can complete in any sequence as long as the step's predecessor jobs have finished.
- You can mark completed manual steps as not complete and run them again as long as there are no subsequent incomplete automatic steps.
- You can cause a step to wait until the job completes before notifying of the step's completion by specifying predecessor jobs that are the same as the successor jobs of the previous step.
- You can notify other users when a particular step starts, stops, did not start by a specific time, or is taking too long. For example you can notify a user who is responsible for a particular manual step that the previous automated steps have completed.

When you use work flows, the activity log displays when the work flow started, the steps that were run, the status of automated steps (success or fail), when the work flow ended, and the final status of the work flow.

Table 12. Work Flow Example

Work Flow	PAYROLL
Scheduled	Every Friday at 1:00 p.m.
Notification	Clerk - Payroll work flow has started
Step 1	Automatic - Specifies a successor job to initialize payroll files
Step 2	Automatic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies the successor job from step 1 as a predecessor job for this step • Notifies Clerk that timecards can be entered
Step 3	Manual: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clerk completes after timecards are entered • Specifies a successor job to process timecard files and print timecard report • Notifies Supervisor if step is not completed within 120 minutes
Step 4	Automatic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies successor job from previous step as a predecessor job • No Successor jobs • Notifies Clerk to check timecard report
Step 5	Manual: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clerk will complete after checking reports • Specifies a successor job to process payroll
Step 6	Automatic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies the successor job from previous step as a predecessor job • No Successor jobs • Notifies Clerk and Supervisor that payroll has completed

In this example the work flow PAYROLL starts every Friday at 1:00 p.m. A notification is sent to the Clerk that the work flow has started.

Because Step 1 is automatic and does not have any predecessor jobs, it flags the successor job that initializes the payroll files to run and then complete. Step 2 has the successor job for Step 1 as its predecessor. Step 2 waits for the job that initializes the payroll files to complete. After it has completed, Step 2 notifies the Clerk that he can enter timecards. There are no successor jobs to flag to run.

The Clerk manually completes Step 3 after all of the timecards are entered. The successor job that processes the timecard file and prints a timecard report is flagged to run. As a precaution, the Supervisor is notified if the step is not completed within 120 minutes. Because the predecessor job for Step 4 is the successor for Step 3, Step 4 waits until the job that processes the timecard file and prints a timecard report has completed.

After the job completes the Clerk is notified that the timecard report can be checked. There are no successor jobs to flag to run. After the timecard report is checked, the Clerk manually completes Step 5. The successor job that processes the payroll and produces the checks is flagged to run.

Because the predecessor job for Step 6 is the successor for Step 5, Step 6 waits until the job that processes the payroll and produces the checks has completed. After the job completes, it notifies the Clerk and Supervisor that Payroll has completed. The checks can now be printed and distributed.

For more detailed information about the Work Flow Manager see the online help.

Creating a new work flow:

When you create a new work flow you will specify how the work flow is started, it's maximum process time, the task steps and their run sequence, scheduling, notification and documentation details.

About this task

To create a new work flow, following the following steps:

- In iSeries Navigator, expand **My Connections** → **your system** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Right-click Work Flow Manager** → **New Work Flow**.

The New Work Flow window appears.

What to do next

For more information about how to complete the New Work Flow window see the online help.

Once you have set up your work flow, you can manage the work flow by right-clicking the work flow name and clicking **Work Flow Status**.

Starting a work flow:

When you start a work flow, you can choose whether you want the work flow to start on the first sequence or on a specific sequence.

About this task

To start a work flow, follow the following steps:

1. From iSeries Navigator, expand **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Work Flow Manager** → **Right-click a work flow** → **Start**. The Start Work Flow window appears.
2. Select if you want the work flow to start on the first sequence or on a specific sequence. If you select to start at a sequence other than the first, all of the prior steps will be marked as completed.

What to do next

For more information about the Start Work Flow window, see the online help.

Working with work flows:

You can control and monitor the work flow as it runs by using the Work Flow Status window.

Before you begin

You can access the Work Flow Status window by expanding **My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Work Flow Manager** → **Right-click a work flow** → **Status**.

About this task

- The General window shows you the current status of the work flow.
- The Steps window provides you with a list of all steps currently defined to the work flow.
You can see whether a step has been defined to be either automated or manual and when the step has started and ended.
 - To mark a manual step as complete, select the correct step and check the **Complete** box.

- Manual steps can be marked completed in any order if all of the predecessor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs for the step have completed.
 - Manual steps can be marked as not completed if there are no Automatic steps completed further in the list.
 - A work flow can be started manually at any step. This bypasses all previous steps.
- To refresh the list, click **Refresh**.
- The Documentation window shows you the documentation text for the work flow.

Monitoring job activity for the Advanced Job Scheduler:

You can use the Advanced Job Scheduler to view the history or status of a job or a job group. You can also set up the activity retention, which is how long you want to retain the activity records for a job.

Scheduled job activity:

The scheduled job activity allows you to specify how long the Advanced Job Scheduler activity records are to be retained. The possible values are 1 to 999 days or occurrences. You can specify to keep activity for a certain number of days, or for a certain number of occurrences per job.

The following details about a scheduled job are displayed:

- Name The name of the scheduled job.
- Group The name of the job group for the job.
- Sequence The sequence number of the job within the group, if the job is in a job group.
- Completion Status The status of the job.
- Started When the job started running.
- Ended When the job ended.
- Elapsed Time The amount of time in hours and minutes the job took to process.

Specifying the activity retention:

These steps show how to specify the activity retention.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Scheduled Job Activity** and click **Properties**.

Viewing the scheduled job activity details:

These steps show how to view the scheduled job activity details.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Double-click **Scheduled Job Activity**.

Viewing the scheduled job activity for a specific job:

These steps show how to view the scheduled job activity for a specific job.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled jobs**.
4. Right-click the Job Name whose activity you want to display and click **Activity**.

Viewing the activity log details:

The activity log displays activity within the scheduler such as a job added, changed, or submitted. Security violations, sequences processed by a scheduled job, and any errors received are displayed. The dates and times for the previous activities are also displayed.

About this task

To view detailed message information, double-click a date and time. To view the activity log details, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Activity Log**. The current day's entries are shown. To change the selection criteria, select **Include** from the Options menu.

Viewing the activity log for a specific job:

These steps show how to view the activity log for a specific job.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled jobs**.
4. Right-click the **Job Name** whose activity log you want to display and click **Activity log**.

Results

You can also use the **Last Run** page of a job's properties to view the progress of a job. Specify the Set Step using Job Scheduler (SETSTPJS) command before or after a step in the CL program along with a description that states the progress of the job. When the job reaches the SETSTPJS command in the program, the associated description is displayed in the Last Run page and on your wireless device.

Monitoring for messages with Advanced Job Scheduler:

Each command in the command list of a job can have message identifiers that are used for monitoring. When the job runs and an error message is issued that matches one of the messages entered for the selected command, the job logs the error but continues processing with the next command in the list.

About this task

If zeros are specified in either two or all four of the rightmost positions, such as ppm00, a generic message identifier is specified. For example, if CPF0000 is specified, all the CPF messages are monitored.

To add message identifiers to a command, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
4. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Properties**.
5. Select the command from the list and click **Properties**.
6. Click **Messages**.
7. Enter the message identifiers to monitor and click **Add**.

Creating and working with local data area:

A local data area is a portion of space that is allocated for a job. Not all jobs use their local data area but some do. Each command within a job has access to the job's local data area. You might want to use a

local data area if you are scheduling a job that previously required you to manually specify additional parameters. Use the local data area to specify the additional parameters so you do not need to manually specify them each time the job starts.

About this task

To specify local data area information for a scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Scheduled Jobs**.
3. Right-click a job and click **Properties**.
4. Edit the Local Data Area window as necessary.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the local data area.

Creating and working with application controls and job controls:

Applications are jobs that are grouped for processing. They are broader than job groups and do not necessarily process sequentially. Jobs in applications can process simultaneously and one job does not need to wait for another to process. All jobs within the application can be worked with and can have their own set of job defaults. Job controls are the defaults assigned to a job as you add it to the job scheduler as well as defaults used when the job is submitted.

About this task

Applications are jobs that have been grouped together for processing. For example, you might have a series of jobs that you use for payroll that you want to group together for an accounting process.

Job Controls are the defaults assigned to a job as you add it to the job scheduler as well as defaults used when the job is submitted. Job control defaults include such things as calendar, holiday calendar, job queue, job description and so on.

You can display all the existing applications/job controls on your system. You can add a new application/job control, add a new application/job control based on an existing one, or remove an application/job control. You can also select an application/job control and display its properties to make changes.

To create a new application/job control, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Applications/Job Controls** tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the application.
5. Type a description for the application.
6. Choose the contacts for the application. Contacts are the names of users who are contacted if you have a problem with a job within the application. You can specify up to 5 contacts per application. You can also choose to add or remove contacts from the contact list.
7. You can type additional information to help you identify the application. The information is associated with the new application. This information might be useful if any problems occur.

Working with notification:

Within notification, you can perform a series of tasks. Notification allows you to specify recipient properties and report distribution list properties. In addition, you can send e-mail messages and set up an escalation list in case a recipient does not respond within a specified amount of time.

About this task

Before you can send an e-mail message, you need to specify a mail server to use for notification.

The following are highlights of the notification function of Advanced Job Scheduler:

Recipient

When scheduling a job, you can specify whether to send notification messages to specified recipients. You can send a notification message if a job fails, completes successfully, or does not start within a specified time limit. For each specified recipient, you need to define the recipient's properties. You can access the recipient's properties by selecting **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Recipients**, and then select a recipient from the list of recipients.

Report distribution list

Use a report distribution list to specify a list of spooled files that are eligible for distribution. Each spooled file produced by a job is checked to see if a match exists within the spooled file list. If so, the recipients associated with that spooled file receives a copy of the spooled file via e-mail, a duplicate of the spooled file in their output queue, or both. You can access report distribution lists by selecting **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Report distribution list**.

E-mail You can send an e-mail message to any recipient that is defined in the list of recipients as well as specific e-mail addresses. The recipient's properties must specify an e-mail address to send the message to. When sending an e-mail message, you can attach a spooled file. The spooled file can be sent in PDF format. In addition, you can specify an escalation list to use if the intended recipient does not respond within a specified period of time.

Specifying a spooled file to attach to an e-mail:

About this task

To specify a spooled file to attach to an e-mail, complete the following:

1. Expand **Basic Operations** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Click **Printer Output**.
3. Right-click the spooled file and click **Send via AJS**.
4. Specify a recipient, subject, and message.

Results

Note: This also can be done from **Output Queues**.

Escalation list

An escalation list specifies a list of recipients in descending order. The recipients are notified in the order that they are listed. If the first recipient does not respond to the message, the message is sent to the next recipient. This process continues until a response is made. To define an escalation list, go to **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Escalation Lists**.

Stopping a message from escalating:

About this task

To stop a message from escalating, complete the following:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Click **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **E-mail** → **Sent**.
3. Right-click the escalating message and click **Stop**.

Note: To view only escalating messages, select **View** → **Customize this view** → **Include** from the iSeries Navigator window. Then, in the **Type** field, select **Escalating**.

Working with library lists:

Library lists are user-defined lists of libraries that are used by the Advanced Job Scheduler when a job is processing.

About this task

A **library list** is a user-defined list of libraries that is used by the Advanced Job Scheduler job to search for information it needs while processing. You can display library lists, add a new library list, add a new library list based on an existing one, or remove a library list, provided that it is not being used by a currently scheduled job.

You can select a list and display its properties to make changes. You can place up to 250 libraries on the library list.

To add a new library list, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Library Lists** tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the library list.
5. Type a description for the library list.
6. Click **Browse** to see a list of existing libraries, and click a library.
7. Click **Add** to add the list of selected libraries.

Results

Working with command variables:

A command variable (previously known as a parameter) is a variable you can store and use in jobs submitted through the Advanced Job Scheduler. Examples of command variables include the beginning of each month, a division number, a company number, and so on.

About this task

Command variables (previously known as parameters) are variables that you store in the Advanced Job Scheduler and use in jobs submitted through the Advanced Job Scheduler. Command variables contain information that will be replaced inside the command string of a scheduled job. Examples of command variables include the beginning of each month, a company division number, a company number and so on. You can display command variables, add a new command variable, add a new command variable based on an existing one, or remove a command variable, provided it is not currently in use by a scheduled job.

You can select an existing command variable and display its properties to make changes.

To add a new command variable, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Command Variables** tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the command variable.
5. Type a description for the command variable.

6. Type the length of the command variable. The length can range from 1 to 90.
7. Choose how you want to supply the replacement value:
 - a. Specify the data to use for the command variable. You use any character in this field. The number of characters in the data cannot be greater than the length specified in the Length field.
 - b. Type a formula to calculate the date. (For examples, see the online Help.)
 - c. Type the program name that you use to retrieve the replacement value.
 - d. Type the library that you use to retrieve the replacement value.
 - e. Choose whether you want the replacement value retrieved from the system operator at run time.

Working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless works on two types of devices. A Wireless Markup Language (WML) device is an Internet-ready cellular phone. A Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) is a PDA or PC Web browser. Throughout this topic, the different devices are referred to as WML and HTML.

Hardware and software requirements:

Before you run Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, make sure that you have met all the necessary software and hardware requirements.

The following elements are required to run the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless:

- Licensed Program 5722-JS1 V5R3: The Advanced Job Scheduler product that includes Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.
- A device to run the function
 - An Internet-enabled telephone with a wireless internet service
 - A PDA with a Web browser, a wireless modem, and a wireless internet service
 - A traditional Web browser on a workstation
- A server running i5/OS^(R) V5R3 or later in a TCP/IP network.
- A Web application server running on your central system, such as any of the following:
 - ASF Jakarta Tomcat Application server
 - Any other application server that runs on the central system, having the capability to host servlets
- HTTP Server installed on the system
- Identify your HTTP server with the Advanced Job Scheduler wireless feature. To do this, connect to the system that has Advanced Job Scheduler installed by using the character-based interface. Then, specify the following command:

```
CALL QIJS/QIJCINT
```

Selecting a device:

Internet-ready telephones and wireless PDAs are a rapidly changing technology. They differ in screen size, in user interface, and in many other significant characteristics. The information in this topic helps you choose devices that are compatible with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless. Other wireless devices are also compatible if they support wireless Internet browsing, but the interaction might be different.

Internet-ready telephones Select an Internet-ready telephone to use with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

PDAs Select a PDA to use with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

PCs You can also use a traditional Web browser with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Configuring your wireless environment:

To ensure that the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless run properly, you need to modify your web application server and firewall configuration.

About this task

Before you begin using Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, ensure that you have properly configured or set up the following items:

1. Configure your Web application server Set up Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless to run using an ASF Jakarta Tomcat servlet engine. These instructions specify how to create and start your Web application server. In addition, it specifies a program that you need to run before working with the wireless function of Advanced Job Server.
2. Configure your firewall This topic describes how to configure your firewall for iSeries Navigator for Wireless. These configuration steps also apply to Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless. View this topic to determine if you need to modify your firewall to gain access to systems from a wireless device.
3. Select a language The default language is set to English, but you can configure your device to display your language of choice.

Results

After you have completed these steps, you are ready to connect to your server and begin using Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Configuring your Web application server:

Before working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, you must start and configure the Web application server. The following procedures set up an ASF Tomcat servlet engine for HTTP Server (powered by Apache) to run Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Requirements

Before you begin, you must have QSECOFR authority and the following installed:

- IBM HTTP Server (5722-DG1)

Note: The following instructions will create a new instance of an HTTP Server; you cannot use the following instructions to set up Advanced Job Scheduler on an existing HTTP Server.

Initializing Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless on the HTTP Server

Running the following command will add the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless servlet to the Apache Software Foundation Jakarta Tomcat servlet engine. It will also set up an IBM HTTP Server (powered by Apache) named Advanced Job SchedulerP that listens for requests on port 8210.

Before working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, you need to initialize the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless on the HTTP server instance on your system. To do this, specify the following command from the character-based interface. This command runs a program that is supplied with your system.

```
CALL QIJS/QIJSINT
```

After you configure your Web application server and initialize the Advanced Job Scheduler instance on the Web application server, you can continue configuring your Advanced Job Scheduler wireless environment.

Configuring your firewall:

When you use iSeries Navigator for Wireless, you access your system from the Internet. If you have a firewall, you might have to modify your firewall setup to run iSeries Navigator for Wireless.

If you have never accessed your systems from the Internet and do not have a firewall set up, refer to the IBM Redbook *AS/400® Internet Security Scenarios: A Practical Approach* for strategies to set up a firewall. See the chapters about screened host architecture and screened subnet architecture.

Selecting a language:

When you connect to Advanced Job Scheduler for wireless, you can specify which language to use. If you do not want to specify a specific language, you can proceed to connecting to your system.

To specify a language, use the following URL:

host. domain: port/servlet/AJSPervasive?lng= lang

- *host*: The host name of the system that contains the product.
- *domain*: The domain where the host is located.
- *port*: The port that the instance of the Web server is listening to
- *lang*: The 2-character identifier for the language. The following is a list of available languages and their 2-character identifiers. (ar: Arabic de: German en: English es: Spanish fr: French it: Italian ja: Japanese)

Now you can begin working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Connecting to your i5/OS operating system:

You can use your wireless device to connect to the system that contains the Advanced Job Scheduler product.

To begin using Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, specify the URL of your system into your wireless device. When pointing your device to the URL on your system, use the following format. Ensure that the end of the URL (/servlet/Advanced Job SchedulerPervasive) is typed exactly as shown:

host. domain: port/servlet/Advanced Job SchedulerPervasive

host: The System i host name. *domain*: The domain where the system is located. *port*: The port that the instance of the Web server is listening to. Default is 8210.

To specify a specific language to use, see Select a language.

Internet-ready telephone and PDA browser layout

If you have successfully connected to the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless feature on your system, the initial display contains summary information about your Internet-ready telephone or PDA. The summary specifies how current the information is, how many scheduled jobs exist, how many activity entries exist, and options to check the status of the job monitor or send a message to a recipient. In addition, the summary provides an overall status of OK or Attention at the top of the display. If Attention is specified, a job has a message that needs more attention. The job that requires attention contains an exclamation point.

Traditional browser layout


The traditional browser layout is exactly the same as the Internet-ready telephone and PDA display. However, the amount of content is smaller than the size of the display. Therefore, you can reduce the size of the Web browser to allow for more space to work with other applications while keeping the Advanced

Job Scheduler for Wireless Web browser open. In addition, if you are using a traditional Internet browser on your PC, you can select to **Show all** from the Advanced Job Scheduler main menu. Then, you can view more content in a single Web page.

After you have successfully connected to your system, you might want to customize your connection.

Customizing your connection:

Using your wireless device, you can customize the interface to your specific needs. For example, you might want to view only certain jobs and specify not to view the job's group name. You also might not want to access the list of scheduled activity. The Customize page on your wireless device allows you to filter jobs as well as change display preferences.

There are many ways to customize your connection whether you are using a PC, PDA, or Internet-ready telephone. To take advantage of these features, see the Job Scheduler for i5/OS  Web site.

Managing Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless:

You can use your wireless device to work with Advanced Job Scheduler.

The following features are available using a wireless device:

View active, held, and pending jobs

You can view a list of the regular jobs (Advanced Job Scheduler jobs) or Management Central jobs that have the active, held, or pending state. You can further customize the jobs displayed by sorting by job type, name, or time. In addition, you can specify which data library contains the data for jobs and activities.

View job dependencies

You can view the predecessor and successor jobs for a particular job. A successor is a job that is dependent on one or more jobs (predecessors) to run. In turn, a successor job can be a predecessor job to other successor jobs.

Display messages

If a job has a message waiting for it, you can view the message text and reply to the message using your wireless device.

Start jobs

You can use your wireless device to submit jobs. The options you can specify when submitting a job depend on what wireless device you use.

Work with Advanced Job Scheduler activity

You can interact with your Advanced Job Scheduler activity from a wireless device. Each activity has different options based on the status of the activity entry.


Internationalization

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless uses the country and language codes associated with your iSeries^(TM) Java^(TM) Virtual Machine to determine what language and date/time formatting to use on your wireless devices. If the Java Virtual Machine defaults are not the codes you want to use, you can easily change it. See the online help for more details.

See the online help for more details on performing specific tasks.

Troubleshooting the Advanced Job Scheduler

When a job does not run at the scheduled time, these troubleshooting methods can help you find out what you can do.

To troubleshoot the Advanced Job Scheduler, first view the Frequently Asked Questions page at Job Scheduler for i5/OS  Web site. See the commonly asked questions that identify how to do certain functions with Advanced Job Scheduler.

Also, here are a list of items that you can review when a job does not run at the scheduled time:

Current fix level

The first thing you should verify is that your fixes are current. When you request fixes, be sure to request a list of all fixes. Not all fixes are included in the Cumulative PTF packages.

Check job monitor

- Job QIJSSCD should be active in the QSYSWRK subsystem. If it is not, process the Start Job Scheduler (STRJS) command.
- The job monitor can be in a loop if the status of the job is RUN for over ten minutes. If it is in a loop, end the job with *IMMED, and start the job monitor again (STRJS).
- If there is a message to answer, reply with a C (Cancel). The job monitor will go into a 90-second delay and then start monitoring again. Print the job log for the monitor job. This will contain the error messages.

Check the Advanced Job Scheduler log

Process the Display Log for Job Scheduler (DSPLOGJS) command for the job. Press F18 to go to the end of the list. Entries exist to explain why the job did not run. Examples of the entries include a resource failure, active or job dependency situation, or submission error.

Dependency on another job

If the job is dependent on another job, take option 10 from the Work with Jobs display to display job dependencies. Press F8 to list all predecessor jobs. A dependent job cannot run unless all the predecessor jobs show *YES in the **Complete** column.

Track a job's progress

If a job is not functioning properly, you can use the Set Step using Job Scheduler (SETSTPJS) command before or after a step in your CL program to help determine what the problem is. Specify the command along with description text in your CL program. Use this command as many times as necessary. The text description that is associated with the current command is displayed in the Command step field on the Last Run page of the scheduled job properties. In addition, you can view the Command step field on the Status window of an active job. The Command step field is automatically updated every time the job encounters the SETSTPJS command. Use this command to help determine the progress of a job.

Collecting these data samples will help in your problem analysis:

Error message conditions

Print the job log for the interactive session, monitor job or scheduled job, depending where the error occurred.

Job schedule date is not correct

Process the DSPJOBJS command for the job with OUTPUT(*PRINT). Print a calendar report if a calendar is used within the job. Print a holiday calendar report if a holiday calendar is used within the job. Press the Print key to print the display of each fiscal calendar entry for the fiscal calendar used within the job.

Advanced Job Scheduler log

Always print the Advanced Job Scheduler log for the time period in question.

Files QAIJSMST and QAIJSHST

Files QAIJSMST and QAIJSHST in library QUSRIJS might need to be journaled before trying to reproduce the problem. Also, the QUSRIJS library may be needed by IBM support.

Related information for Management Central

Listed here are the Web sites and information center topics that relate to the Management Central topic collection.

Web sites

You can use a variety of Web sites to find more information about Management Central. These include:

- [iSeries Navigator](#) 

iSeries Navigator provides a wide variety of tools to simplify iSeries/OS management. Go to the iSeries Navigator home page to find information about iSeries Navigator, including functional release overviews, news about technical conferences, and other hot topics. You'll find links to a variety of information including release updates, functional overviews, FAQs, and more.

Other information

You will find links from various places in the Management Central topic to other information center topics that relate to Management Central.

- [Single sign-on](#)

If you have been looking for a way to simplify the task of managing user profiles on the System i product, single signon may be the answer for you. This information presents a single signon solution for your system, which uses the technology of Enterprise Identity Mapping (EIM), paired with your system's network authentication service. The single signon solution simplifies the task of managing user profiles, while reducing the number of signons that a user must perform to access multiple applications and servers.

This topic includes a scenario that demonstrates how to configure an entire system group to participate in a single signon environment. After administrators complete the scenario for propagating a single signon configuration across multiple systems, they can do the necessary configuration so that the entire system group can participate in the single signon environment.

- [Experience Report: Configuring Management Central Connections for Firewall Environments](#)

This report details Management Central connections and the configurations required to enable Management Central to operate within a variety of firewall environments. As a distributed management application, Management Central requires numerous incoming and outgoing TCP/IP socket connections. In contrast, the basic premise of a firewall is to restrict/modify incoming and outgoing connections.

- For information about installing and getting started with iSeries Navigator, refer to [Getting to know iSeries Navigator](#) in the Information Center.

- [iSeries Navigator for Wireless](#)


The iSeries Navigator for Wireless Web page gives you more information about the solution for pervasive computing.

Saving PDF files

To save a PDF on your workstation for viewing or printing:

1. Right-click the PDF in your browser (right-click the link above).
2. Click the option that saves the PDF locally.
3. Navigate to the directory in which you want to save the PDF.
4. Click **Save**.

Downloading Adobe Reader

- | You need Adobe Reader installed on your system to view or print these PDFs. You can download a free copy from the Adobe Web site (www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep.html) .

Code license and disclaimer information

IBM grants you a nonexclusive copyright license to use all programming code examples from which you can generate similar function tailored to your own specific needs.

- | SUBJECT TO ANY STATUTORY WARRANTIES WHICH CANNOT BE EXCLUDED, IBM, ITS PROGRAM DEVELOPERS AND SUPPLIERS MAKE NO WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT, REGARDING THE PROGRAM OR TECHNICAL SUPPORT, IF ANY.

- | UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES IS IBM, ITS PROGRAM DEVELOPERS OR SUPPLIERS LIABLE FOR ANY OF THE FOLLOWING, EVEN IF INFORMED OF THEIR POSSIBILITY:

- | 1. LOSS OF, OR DAMAGE TO, DATA;
- | 2. DIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR INDIRECT DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY ECONOMIC CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES; OR
- | 3. LOST PROFITS, BUSINESS, REVENUE, GOODWILL, OR ANTICIPATED SAVINGS.

- | SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO SOME OR ALL OF THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

Getting started with Management Central

To make the Management Central work more effectively, set up your central system and endpoint systems in a way that makes sense for your business environment. When you have finished these preliminary steps, you are ready to start working with Management Central.

About this task

To view or download a PDF version of this topic, select **Getting started with Management Central** (about 290 KB).

Before you begin

To make sure that you complete a smooth installation and a successful connection to Management Central, it is suggested that you follow these instructions before you start the installation process.

Configuring TCP prerequisite checklist

To ensure a smooth installation and setup of Management Central, you must make sure that the environment is properly prepared. Use the checklist in this topic to make sure that everything is ready before you begin installing Management Central.

Prerequisite checklist

1. Your System i product is current with the latest fixes, service packs for the client, and Java PTF group.
2. Read the Frequently Asked Questions at the Navigator service Web site.
3. Use the QTIMZON system value to set the Java time zone for any system that is OS/400 V5R2 or earlier. (This is because in any systems V5R3 or later the QTIMZON system value is used for the Java time zone.)
4. Load all clients with iSeries Navigator and the latest service packs. (The release of the client may be at a higher release than the central system.)
5. Determine the IP address of all of the clients that you will be using. If the client has multiple IP address, it might be necessary to set the IP address to be used so that the central system can connect back to the PC. In such a situation, setting the value for QYPS_HOSTNAME in the MgmtCtrl.properties file will identify the IP address to be used. The following steps can help you decide which IP address will work. To do this use the IPCONFIG command from a DOS prompt. Write the addresses down for future reference.
 - a. Confirm a valid connection from the PC to the central system. Use the ping command (ping xx.xx.xx.xx, where x=the IP address of the central system) on the PC.
 - b. Run IPCONFIG from the command prompt on the PC and record all of the IP Addresses.
 - c. From the central system, ping each IP Address.
 - d. For the first IP address that works, create the file C:\MgmtCtrl.properties file and add this line:
QYPS_HOSTNAME==<ip address on which you performed the ping>.
6. If you are upgrading iSeries Navigator from a previous release, close all open iSeries Navigator windows that might be open and exit iSeries Navigator. Start iSeries Navigator and try to connect to the central system.

Management Central connection considerations

Understanding how Management Central establishes a connection is an important contributing factor toward a successful installation and setup. Whether your system configuration is complex or simple there are many considerations that affect a successful connection.

How Management Central establishes a connection

When the Management Central Java server (QYPSJSVR) starts it obtains the IP address for itself, by long name (system + domain name), from TCP/IP. Typically, the clients that appear under My Connections and the Management Central endpoints are defined by the system name or short name.

The iSeries Navigator lookup frequency default is *Always*. This setting causes a system that is listed under My Connections to use the DNS or the TCP/IP host table (Configure TCP/IP (CFGTCP) option 10) to determine the IP address so that it can connect to the central system. The Host Name Search Priority (Configure TCP/IP (CFGTCP) option 12) option controls how the DNS search is done. If it is *LOCAL, it will search the TCP/IP host table first. If it does not find it there, it will use the DNS. If it is *REMOTE, then the DNS is searched first, followed by the TCP/IP host table.

Connection timeout delay

When the Management Central systems on an endpoint are not running, a connection failure happens right away. However, if the system is down or if a bad IP address is being used, the connection cannot be made and there will be a several minute timeout delay before the connection failure is posted.

Connection tests

Management Central uses the IP address of the system located under My Connection to connect to the Central System. When Management Central performs a connection test it does a ping on the PC of the name that is being used for the Central System (typically short name) and then it returns the same IP address as a Ping on the Central System by the long name. If this is not successful, then the client cannot connect with the Java server. You can resolve this by overriding the Central System's IP address.

To override the IP address on the Central System use the following character-based command:

```
CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(XXXX 'y.y.y.y')
```

Where XXXX is the setting QYPSHOSTNAME and y.y.y.y is the value of the IP address to be used.

Important: Edit the file using the character-based interface. Do not use a mapped drive, or other method.

Lookup frequency

The system environment variable QYPS_DNS sets the Management Central lookup frequency (values 0 = Never, 1 = Always). You can set the QYPS_DNS system variable by using one of these methods:

- Management Central properties window
- The Connection tab on the client
- Use the character-based interface to add an environment variable

```
CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(XXXX 'y')
```

Where QYPS_DNS is the setting and y is the value 0 or 1.

It is recommended that the lookup frequency is set to Always. When the lookup frequency is set to Always, the IP address in the properties of the endpoint is ignored and a request for the IP address via the DNS or the Host Table on the central system is made. As a result, if IP addresses are changed or if the DNS or host table is changed, the new IP address is automatically picked up by Management Central.

When the lookup frequency is set to Never, the IP address that is contained in the properties of the endpoint object is used. As a result, it is possible that a client can successfully connect to the central system which uses the IP address that is determined by the My-Connection, but then have a task run to the central system and have a connection failure. Such an event indicates that the Management Central

lookup frequency is set to Never and that the IP address in the endpoint for the central system is incorrect. To resolve this situation, edit the IP address for the endpoint on the endpoint properties window.

Note: The Management Central lookup frequency is a different setting than the lookup frequency setting for a system under My Connections.

Connecting to a Java server

When a client connects to a Java server, the Java server uses an authentication procedure that connects back to the PC. Therefore, the central system must be able to ping the PC.

A common connection problem occurs when the PC's address is one that is reserved for private networks (such as when an individual uses VPN from home to gain access to their network behind their router). For example, assume the PC's address is 10.100.46.143 and the IP address of the central system is 164.143.28.82. A connection failure occurs because addresses that start with 10 are not forwarded by routers. In such a situation, you need to find out what the external IP address of the PC is and then set up a client C:\MgmtCtrl.properties file, and then add the line QYPS_HOSTNAME=xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (where the xxx's are the external IP address of the PC). This causes the Java server use the IP address specified in the properties file to connect to the PC.

Management Central bulk data transfer considerations

A *bulk transfer* is a function that is used in Management Central to transfer data from a source system to a target system (such sending of a package, sending PTFs, and so on). For a successful transfer, the target system needs to be able to connect back to the source system. The IP address that is used on the target system is determined by the lookup frequency on the target system. If the lookup frequency is Never then the IP address that is used is the one that is provided by the central system for the source system. If the lookup frequency on the target system is set to Always then it will use DNS or the host table to determine the IP address of the source system.

Running Management Central tasks from My Connections

Some of the iSeries Navigator functions use Management Central to obtain information. For example, you can view PTFs that are in Inventory by using **My Connections** → **Configuration and Service**. If Management Central cannot connect to the central system then the function that you are trying to access will experience a several minute time out delay. This results in a connection failure message. A good practice to follow is to expand Management Central before you attempt to run any Management Central functions that are located under My Connections. By doing so, you will make sure that you can connect to the central system.

To run a Management Central task on a system in My Connections, the system must also be defined as an endpoint under Management Central. To define a system as an endpoint expand **Management Central** → **Right-click Endpoint Systems** → **New Endpoint Systems**.

Installing Management Central

After you have completed all of the prerequisite tasks, you are ready to install Management Central. This topic series covers the installation steps as well as how the connection function works. If you fail to connect successfully after you have installed Management Central, see the information about troubleshooting Management Central connections.

Why the highest release of Management Central is required


Each new release of Management Central contains updated functions, features and fixes that give Management Central the ability to manage a system that has machines that are running different versions

of i5/OS. In order to use these new features, you must have the most current release of Management Central, and the Management Central dependencies.

Checking for the most current MC code

You must have the most current Management Central server code, Management Central client code, and Management Central dependencies before you can successfully use Management Central.


Checking the Management Central systems for the most current code

The IBM Software technical document, Recommended PTFs for Management Central Supported Releases  (document number 360059564), provides a summary of the recommended fixes by release.

To access this page from the IBM Web page (www.ibm.com) follow this navigation path.

1. From the menu bar click **Products**.
2. From the Products page, under Systems & Servers, click **System i (iSeries)**.
3. From the System i page, on the navigation bar that is located on the left side, click **Support**.
4. From the Support for IBM System i page, on the navigation bar that is located on the left side, click **Support search**.
5. From the IBM System i5 Support search page, in the **Search for** field, type the document number and click **Search**.

Checking the Management Central client for the most current code

The iSeries Access  page provides up-to-date information about the service packs (fixes) for iSeries Access for Windows. To access this page from the IBM web page (www.ibm.com) follow this navigation path.

1. From the menu bar click **Products**.
2. From the Products page, under System & Servers, click **System i (iSeries)**.
3. From the System i page, on the navigation bar that is located on the left side, click **Software**.
4. From the System i software page, click **System i software from A to Z**.
5. Under A, click **iSeries Access**.
6. On the iSeries Access page, on the navigation bar that is located on the left side, click **Service Packs (Fixes)**.

Installing and accessing Management Central

Some of the systems management functions that you can use are optionally installable components of iSeries Navigator, the graphical user interface (GUI) for the System i product.

About this task

- | When you choose the Typical option on the install wizard, the following Management Central functions
| are installed:
- | • Tasks (inventory only)
 - | • Endpoint systems
 - | • System groups

If you did not install all of the components that you need when you installed iSeries Navigator, complete the steps:

1. From the menu bar in iSeries Navigator, select **File** → **Install Options** → **Selective Setup**.

2. Use the Selective Setup wizard to install the additional components that you need for systems management functions. To get all the systems management functions, select Configuration and Service, Users and Groups, Commands, Packages and Products, and Monitors.

When you use the Selective Setup wizard, the components you select will be installed. Any components you deselect during the selective setup will be uninstalled. Be careful not to accidentally uninstall anything while you use the Selective Setup wizard.

Results

When iSeries Navigator has been installed, double-click the desktop icon to start iSeries Navigator. You are now ready to set up your central system.

Verifying the connection function

The Verify Connection function that is located under Management Central is different from the function that is located under My Connection. This topic discusses the purpose of each function and how they differ from each other.

Verifying Connection from My Connection

My Connections → **Right-click a system** → **Diagnostics** → **Verify Connection**

This Verify Connection function pings the different host servers to see if they are up and running correctly and can be reached from the PC. Since it is restricted to single system Navigator functions, it is one of the first things you should rule out when you are troubleshooting a Management Central connection failure. (Many Management Central functions build on the single system functions.) After you have confirmed that the connection to the endpoint systems, under My Connections is successful, then you can proceed to verify the connection from Management Central.

Verifying Connection from Management Central

Right-click Management Central → **Verify Connection**

The Verify Connection function from the Management Central container is a diagnostic tool that checks the most common factors that can cause a failed connection. It then displays the status of these tests. If it reports any failures, you can obtain specific information about the failure as well as recovery information by clicking **Details**. The following is a list of what Management Central verifies.

- The Java setup is correct on the Central System (This includes verifying that certain .jar files are present, and that certain integrated file system file and folder authorities have not been changed)
- The required files that were shipped with the operating system have not been deleted from the Central System, are not damaged, and are being journaled
- The TCP/IP configuration on the Central System is valid (This includes verifying that the host name of both the Central System and the PC are in the host tables or in the DNS as appropriate)
- That a simple Navigator connection can be made to the Central System
- The VRM, host name, the IP address of the Central system, and the VRM of iSeries Navigator
- That the ports that Management Central uses are not in use by another application on the central system
- That on the central system, the user profiles that are needed to run Management Central have not been deleted, or disabled and that they have valid, unexpired passwords.
- That if SSL is being used on the central system, it is configured correctly and that both the PC and central system are using SSL.
- That the central system isn't marked as a "secondary system" in an Management Central High Availability environment (Secondary systems cannot be used as central systems.)
- That the Management Central servers are up and running on the central system

- It reports what types of authentication are supported on the central system

Note:

iSeries Navigator uses the Java toolbox code on the client side (PC) to start the Management Central Verify Connection function. If the toolbox code is not working correctly then the Verify Connection function will not start. If the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) or the toolbox code on the server side is not working correctly, the Verify Connection function will work until the last few checks. The JVM must start before these last few checks can be performed.

Setting up the central system

To manage multiple systems from a single system, you need to have a central system. After you have installed Management Central and connected successfully, you are ready to set up the central system.

The systems in your network are called *endpoint systems*. You select one of these endpoint systems as your central system. After you add endpoint systems to your network and select your central system, you only need to do your system administration tasks once. Your central system will initiate your tasks and store the necessary systems management data. You choose your central system when you first start iSeries Navigator. You can also easily change your central system at any time.

Important: The release of the Central System must be the highest release in the network.

Setting up your central system for the first time

This information outlines the requirements for configuring the central system for the first time.

About this task

To start using iSeries Navigator, double-click the desktop icon and select a system to connect to and define a System i connection. The first system you specify is assigned as your central system. Management Central appears automatically at the top of the list in the left pane of your iSeries Navigator window. The Management Central server is automatically started on the central system.

To access the distributed systems management functions of iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central**.

| For systems running i5/OS V5R3 and later, the Management Central databases are located in libraries QMGTC and QMGTC2. For systems running releases earlier than i5/OS V5R3, the Management Central databases are located in the QUSRSYS library.

| To complete an initialization, the Management Central sever requires that QSECOFR is enabled and active. If you use a different profile name with the same kind of authorization as QSECOFR, you need to run the following command on the central system.

```
| CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID 'XXXXX')
```

| (xxxxx is a user ID other than the default of QSECOFR)

| In some cases, the central system might have multiple IP addresses by which it can be accessed (CFGTCP option 10). You can use a ping command on the central system to display the IP address that will be returned to Management Central. If this is not the IP address that the clients use to connect to the system, you can override the default IP address with the address that the ping command displayed. You can use the following command to override the default IP address.

```
| CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(QYPS_HOSTNAME 'w.x.y.z')
```

| (w.x.y.z is the IP address that Management Central should use for connection purposes)

If your central system is running OS/400 V5R2 or later (or V5R1 with PTF SI06917), you can right-click **Management Central** and select **Verify Connection** to verify that the central system connection is configured properly. To see detailed information about any Failed message, select the message and click **Details** (or double-click the message).

| **Note:** The Verify Connection function only confirms that Management Central is working properly on the
| central system. TCP/IP configuration and firewalls also might prevent the Management Central
| client from successfully connecting to the central system.

Results

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Management Central settings and options

If you are migrating from a release that is earlier than V5R3, you should note that the system environment variables were moved. This topic explains where you can find the client and server environment variables for systems running a release of V5R3 or later.

/QIBM/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McCSConfig.properties

QYPS_EARLIEST_RELEASE
QYPS_MAXPTF_SIZE
QYPS_FTP_DISCOVERY
QYPS_DISCOVERY_TIMEOUT
QYPS_DISC_LCLSUBNET
QYPS_SNMP_DISCOVERY
QYPS_IP_DISCOVERY
QYPS_DISCOVERY_STARTUP
QYPS_MAX_SOCKETS
QYPS_MAX_CONTIMOUT
QYPS_RETRY_TIMEOUT
QYPS_RETRY_INTERVAL
QYPS_AUTORETRY
QYPS_SOCKETTIMEOUT
QYPS_COLLECTPTF_IFCHANGED
QYPS_DNS
QYIV_QUERY_MAX_SIZE
QYPSJ_SAVF_RECORDS
QYPSJ_TOOLBOX_TRACE
QYPS_LOCATION
QYPS_LOCATION2
QYPSJ_CONNECT_INTERVAL

/Qibm/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McCSSecure.properties

(SSL setup)

QYPS_AUTH_LEVEL
QYPS_SSL

/Qibm/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McEPConfig.properties

QYPS_TRACE
 QYPSJ_TRACE
 QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID
 QYPS_MAX_TRANSFERS
 QYPS_HOSTNAME
 QYPS_MINIMUM_PORT
 QYPS_MAXIMUM_PORT

/Qibm/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McEPSecure.properties

QYPS_USER_PASSWORD
 QYPS_BASIC_AUTH
 QYPS_TRUST_LEVEL
 QYPS_KERBEROS_PRINCIPAL
 QYPS_KERBEROS_CONFIG
 QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID
 QYPS_ID_MAPPING_ONLY
 QYPS_USE_ID_MAPPING

Settings

iSeries Navigator allows you to manage multiple systems from a single system in a TCP/IP network environment. Some aspects of your TCP/IP environment may require changes to your Management Central server configuration. For example, if you are using a firewall or if you want to use SSL encryption for Management Central server communications, you might need to change some of your Management Central server settings.

Table 13. Management Central settings set via iSeries Navigator

Name	Description	Values	iSeries Navigator Field Name(Right-click Management Central → Properties → Connection tab)
QYPS_AUTORETRY	Specifies whether to automatically restart monitors on failed systems.	0=No, 1=Yes	Automatically restart monitors on failed systems
QYPS_COLLECTPTF_IFCHANGED	Update fixes inventory only if changes have occurred	0 = NO, 1 = YES; 0 is the default	When collecting inventory, only update when changes have occurred
QYPS_DNS	IP address lookup frequency	0 = Never, 1 = Always,	IP address lookup frequency
QYPS_MAX_CONTIMOUT	Maximum time (in seconds) to wait for a connection to a system to be established	1 to 3600 (The default value is 180 seconds.)	While connected to endpoint systems
QYPS_MAX_SOCKETS	Maximum number of sockets that can be created on a system	200 (This is the default value.)	Maximum connections
QYPS_MAXPTF_SIZE	Maximum data transfer size	-1 = No maximum size	Maximum data transfer size (MB)
QYPS_RETRY_INTERVAL	Specifies how often (in minutes) to attempt a monitor restart	5 (This is the default value.)	How often to attempt restart
QYPS_RETRY_TIMEOUT	Specifies how long (in minutes) to attempt a monitor restart	180 (This is the default value.)	How long to attempt restart
QYPS_SOCKETTIMEOUT	Maximum time (in seconds) to wait on a socket to return from a request	30 seconds (This is the default value.)	When connecting to endpoint systems

Table 14. Management Central settings set via character-based interface

Name	Description	Values	Use the character-based interface
QYIV_QUERY_MAX_SIZE	Maximum number of records in the Inventory query	200	

Table 14. Management Central settings set via character-based interface (continued)

Name	Description	Values	Use the character-based interface
QYPS_HOSTNAME	The host name or IP address that you want the endpoints and the PC to connect to when they need to make a new connection back to the system. Note: If you use a host name, then you are relying on the endpoint or the PC to resolve the host name through their host table or DNS.		
QYPS_LOCATION	Library name where the Management Central databases are found	QMGTCT	
QYPS_LOCATION2	Second library name where the Management Central databases are found	QMGTCT2	
QYPS_ID_MAPPING_ONLY	Indicates whether only the Enterprise Identity Mapping (EIM) should be used for authentication	0=No, 1=Yes	
QYPS_MAXIMUM_PORT	Used by BDT (Bulk Data Transfer) QYPSBDTSVR job . Minimum of range of port number to be used.		
QYPS_MINIMUM_PORT	Used by BDT (Bulk Data Transfer) QYPSBDTSVR job . Minimum of range of port number to be used.	Name of host server	
QYPS_TRACE	C++ server tracing	-1 to turn Off; or 0 to turn On	
QYPS_USE_ID_MAPPING	Java server tracing	-1 to turn Off; or 2 to turn On	
QYPSJ_CONNECT_INTERVAL	How often (in seconds) to do the heartbeat to check connections.	60	
QYPSJ_PORT	Port on which the Java server is listening to for incoming client requests	5544 (This is the default value.)	
QYPSJ_SAVF_RECORDS	Maximum number of records in the Java save file	100	
QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID	User profile with all object authority	User profile which the Java server runs as for certain tasks. This profile must have *SECOFR class authority. QSECOFR is the default, or you can specify the user profile name.	
QYPSJ_TOOLBOX_TRACE	Indicates whether to turn Toolbox trace on	0=Off, 1=On	
QYPSRV_PORT	Port on which the C++ server is listening to for incoming client requests	5555. (This is the default value.)	
QYPSJ_TRACE	Port on which the C_ server is listening to for incoming client requests	Default 5555	

Table 15. Management Central settings set via iSeries Navigator

Name	Description	Values	iSeries Navigator Field Name (Management Central → Right-click Endpoint Systems → Properties)
QYPS_DISC_LCLSUBNET	Discover local subnet	0 = No, 1 = Yes	
QYPS_DISCOVERY_STARTUP	Search every time the Management Central server starts	0 = No, 1 = Yes	
QYPS_DISCOVERY_TIMEOUT	Discovery timeout (in seconds)	15 (This is the default value.)	Timeout (seconds)
QYPS_EARLIEST_RELEASE	Earliest operating system release to search for	V5R4M0, this is the default	Earliest operating system release to search for
QYPS_FTP_DISCOVERY	Run discovery using File Transfer Protocol	0 = No, 1 = Yes	How to verify systems, FTP check box
QYPS_IP_DISCOVERY	Run discovery using Internet Protocol	0 = No, 1 = Yes	

Table 15. Management Central settings set via iSeries Navigator (continued)

Name	Description	Values	iSeries Navigator Field Name (Management Central → Right-click Endpoint Systems → Properties)
QYPS_SNMP_DISCOVERY	Run discovery using Simple Network Mail Protocol	0 = No, 1 = Yes	How to verify systems, SNMP check box

The following table contains Property file (/Qibm/UserData/OS400/Mgtc/Config/McConfig.properties) settings that you might need to change in order to accommodate your system's needs. Unless it is otherwise indicated, use the character-based interface to make these changes.

Table 16. Management Central property file parameters

Parameter	Description	Values	
QYPS_SSL	Turns the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) on or off.	0 = Off, 1 = On	iSeries Navigator Field Name(Right-click Management Central → Properties → Security tab) Field name = Use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)
QYPS_AUTH_LEVEL	SSL authentication level. This value works with the QYPS_SSL.	0 = off (This is the default. It can only connect to a server without SSL), 1 = Sever Authentication on (This means it can connect to server with or without SSL.)	iSeries Navigator (Right-click Management Central → Properties → Security tab) Field name = Authentication level
QYPS_USER_PASSWORD	Require password on endpoint systems	0 = No, 1 = Yes	iSeries Navigator (Right-click Management Central → Properties → Security tab) Field name = Use profile and password authentication
QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID	The user profile with which the Java Server runs as, for certain tasks	QSECOFR (This is the default value.) You can also specify a user profile name, however its profile must have *SECOFR class authority.	

Adding endpoint systems to your Management Central network

An endpoint system is any system or logical partition in your TCP/IP network that you choose to manage through your central system.

About this task

When you add a connection to a system from iSeries Navigator (by clicking **File → Connection to Servers → Add connection** while your current environment is selected in the left pane), the system is added to the list under your current active environment (typically named My Connections). Alternatively, when you add a new endpoint system, the system name is added to the list of Endpoint Systems under Management Central.

When you perform an action on a system under My Connections, a direct connection from the client (your PC) to the system is required, and actions are performed on one system at a time. In contrast, Management Central allows systems management tasks to be performed on multiple systems (in the Endpoint Systems list) and only one client connection (to the central system) is required.

- | The central system handles the connections to the endpoint systems. The Management Central property
- | setting for the Lookup Frequency controls how the IP address for an endpoint system is determined. If it
- | is set to NEVER then the IP address that is stored in the endpoint object is used. If it is set to ALWAYS,
- | then the TCP/IP, on the system provides the IP address for the system name that is specified.

Note: If you are adding endpoint systems that are running OS/400 V5R1, you must have the following fixes (also known as PTFs) installed on the V5R1 system: SI01375, SI01376, SI01377, SI01378, and SI01838. Without these fixes, you will not be able to use all the systems management functions on the endpoint system.

To add one or more endpoint systems, complete the following steps:

1. Right-click **Endpoint Systems** and select **New Endpoint System**.
2. Enter the name of the system and click **OK**.

Results

The endpoint systems that you added appear automatically under **Endpoint Systems** in your iSeries Navigator window. After you have added an endpoint system, you can view its properties. You can also change the description or the IP address as needed.

Next, you can create system groups to help you manage different sets of endpoint systems. The new system groups will appear under Management Central in iSeries Navigator.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

How to completely remove endpoints

To completely remove an endpoint that is also defined as a My Connection system, all users that have the system defined must remove the My connection system so it will not be automatically added.

When connecting to a target system, Management Central requires and uses endpoint objects. Additionally, many Management Central functions appear under systems that are listed under My Connections. Thus, whenever a user creates a system under My Connections, an endpoint object is saved in the database on the central system as well as the client PC.

If you delete the endpoint from Management Central only the entry in the central system database is deleted. You must also delete the system from all clients that have that system listed under My Connections. Otherwise, the next time user, that still has that system listed under My Connections, starts iSeries Navigator the endpoint will be automatically added again to Management Central

Creating system groups in your Management Central network

A *system group* is a collection of endpoint systems that you define. If you are working with multiple systems or multiple logical partitions, creating a system group allows you to perform tasks on all the systems without selecting each endpoint system. Just select the system group you created and start your task.

About this task

Endpoint systems can belong to several system groups at the same time. After you have created a system group, you can manage the entire group from your central system as if it were a single system.

To create a system group, follow these steps:

1. Open **Management Central** from your **iSeries Navigator** window.
2. Right-click **System Groups** and select **New System Group**.
3. On the **New System Group** window, specify a unique name for the new system group. You can also enter a brief description that will help you later identify this group in a list of system groups.
4. From the **Available systems** list, select the endpoint systems that you want to include in this new group. Click the **Add** button to add the systems to the **Selected systems** list.
5. If you want to give other users the ability to view or change this system group, use sharing. Click the **Sharing** tab and specify **Read-only** or **Full** sharing. If you specify **None**, other users will not be able to view or change this system group unless they have special authority, which is administered under Host Applications in Application Administration. Users with this special authority, called

Management Central Administration Access, can view all tasks, definitions, monitors, and system groups under Management Central in the iSeries Navigator window.

6. Click **OK** to create the new system group.

Results

The system group you create will include all the endpoint systems you entered. You may decide later that you want to edit that list of endpoint systems. You can always add more endpoint systems or remove endpoint systems from your system group.

You can delete system groups from Management Central. When you delete a system group or remove endpoint systems from a system group, only the system group is changed. The endpoint systems that were in the system group are still listed under **Endpoint Systems** in the iSeries Navigator window. If you delete an endpoint system from the **Endpoint Systems** list, that endpoint system is removed from all system groups.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Changing the central system setup

You can select a different system as your central system at any time. The central system must be a system to which you are directly connected. For the latest iSeries Navigator functions, your central system should be running i5/OS Version 5, Release 4 (V5R4).

Before you begin

If your PC is running V5R2 or V5R3 iSeries Navigator, and you want to select a central system that is running OS/400 V5R1, you must have the following fixes (also known as PTFs) installed on the V5R1 system: SI01375, SI01376, SI01377, SI01378, and SI01838. Without these fixes, you will not be able to connect to the V5R1 system as a central system.

About this task

To change your central system, follow these steps:

1. Right-click Management Central and select **Change Central System**.
2. Use the **Change Central System** window to choose a system from your list of connected systems.
3. If the system you want to use as your central system is not currently connected to your iSeries Navigator network, right-click your active environment (typically "My Connections") and choose **Connection to Servers** → **Add connection**. When the new system is connected, you can change your central system to the new system.

Results

After you have added endpoint systems and created system groups, those endpoint systems and system groups will appear under Management Central as well. Once you have set up your central system, you are ready to do the other tasks necessary for setting up Management Central.

| **Important:** The central system that you use should be equal to or at a later release than the releases of
| the endpoints that are being used.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Management Central plug-ins

A plug-in is a separately installable component of iSeries Navigator. A plug-in adds folders and objects to the hierarchy tree, choices to iSeries Navigator menus, and property pages to the property sheet for a folder or object. There are several Management Central plug-ins that you can use to manage your system.

Backup, Recovery, and Media Services (BRMS)

IBM Backup, Recovery, and Media Services (BRMS) helps you implement a disciplined approach to managing your backups and provides you with an orderly way to retrieve lost or damaged data.

BRMS is the IBM strategic solution for planning and managing save and restore operations on your System i product. BRMS base product provides all of the functions that most System i users need to implement a fully automated, single system, backup, recovery, and media management strategy. Using BRMS, you can manage your most critical and complex save operations, including online backups of Lotus servers. It also supports parallel save operations of a library or single object using up to 32 tape devices, which shortens the save window by using multiple devices. You can also recover your system fully during a disaster or failure, or restore single objects or libraries from your save media. BRMS can also perform some daily maintenance activities that are related to your backup routine.

In addition to these backup and recovery features, BRMS can support and manage an unlimited number of media, shared tape devices, automated tape libraries, virtual tape devices, and IBM Tivoli Storage Manager servers. BRMS enables you to track all of your media from creation to expiration. You no longer have to keep track of which items are on which volumes, and worry that you will accidentally write over active data.

As your business needs change and grow, you can add functions to the BRMS base product by purchasing and installing additional options. The Network feature of the BRMS product provides centralized management of multiple BRMS systems within a network using local TCP/IP, Advanced Peer-to-Peer Network (APPN), or both. A BRMS network system shares the inventory and policies associated with media managed within BRMS network group. In addition, users can view the save history of any system in the network from a single system. The networking feature also simplifies media duplication by using one system in the network to duplicate media for another system in the network. The systems in a BRMS network can be other System i platforms or individual i5/OS partitions.

The Advanced feature of the BRMS product enables Hierarchical Storage Manager (HSM) archive with HSM dynamic retrieval and automated disk pool data migration. Parallel save operations work with the BRMS Advanced feature to allow for parallel archive and parallel dynamic retrieval of a single object. The ability to dynamically retrieve a large database file in parallel helps to reduce the window of the retrieval process. The BRMS Advanced feature allows archive capabilities of database files, stream files, and documents based on frequency of use, inactivity limit, object size, or disk pool thresholds.

BRMS provides both the traditional character-based interface and a graphical user interface (GUI), which is available as a plug-in to iSeries Navigator. These interfaces are not mutually exclusive. You can either choose both interfaces, using the character-based interface for some tasks and the BRMS plug-in for others, or you can choose to use one interface exclusively. However, differences between these BRMS interfaces do exist and you should be aware of them.

Important: BRMS is not a replacement for a backup, recovery, and media management strategy; it is a tool that you use to implement your strategy. Before you start doing backups using BRMS or any other product, you should plan your backup and recovery strategy.

Clusters

Clusters let you efficiently group your System i products together to set up an environment that provides availability that approaches 100 percent for your critical applications, devices, and data.

Clusters also provide simplified systems management and increased scalability to seamlessly add new components as your business grows.

By using the code examples, you agree to the terms of the Code license and disclaimer information.

Working with systems with partitions

The Systems with Partitions container that is located under Management Central lets you manage the logical partitions of all of the servers on the system from the central system.

With logical partitioning (LPAR), you can address multiple system requirements in a single system to achieve system consolidation, business unit consolidation, and mixed production or test environments. By itself, LPAR does not provide a significant availability increase. It can, however, be used to complement other availability strategies. Since each partition is treated as a separate system, you can run a single environment on a single system image. This can provide for a more cost efficient solution.

Authority requirements

Access to logical partition information in iSeries Navigator, Dedicated Service Tools (DST), and System Service Tools (SST) requires either operations or administration authority to the logical partition function. In addition, you need remote panel authorization if you want to use the Operations Console remote panel for secondary partitions from your PC.

Logical partitions can be created using iSeries Navigator. In order to access logical partition functions, you must first configure the service tools server. Service tools are used to configure, manage, and service your IBM iSeries model 270 or 8xx or logical partitions. If you want to manage logical partitions on servers other than model 8xx, you must use the Hardware Management Console (HMC). You will need to use a service tools user ID with LPAR administrator authority.

Advanced Job Scheduler

The Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program (5722-JS1) is a powerful scheduler that allows unattended job processing 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. This scheduling tool provides more calendar features and offers greater control over scheduled events than the Management Central scheduler. You can also view job completion history and manage notification of a job's status.

If you want to schedule jobs on several systems in your network, the product must be installed on each of your systems. If you want to use the Advanced Job Scheduler in iSeries Navigator (and in Management Central), then you must install the client plugin from a system that has the Advanced Job Scheduler installed.

However, it is not necessary to install the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program on each endpoint system in your Management Central network. When you install the Advanced Job Scheduler on the central system, jobs or tasks that you define on an endpoint system will gather job information that is needed from the central system. You must set up all job definition information on the central system.

If systems in your network have the Advanced Job Scheduler installed locally, you can schedule tasks outside of the Management Central network. Under **My Connections** in iSeries Navigator, you have access to the Advanced Job Scheduler on that local system when you expand **Work Management**.

Note: For ordering information, see the Job Scheduler for i5/OS  web site.

Troubleshooting Management Central connections

Several factors can prevent a connection to the Management Central server. You can take these steps to troubleshoot a failed connection.

About this task

First and foremost, make sure that the central system is running on the highest operating system release in the network. Problems can occur because there are clients in the network that are running an operating system that is at a higher release than the central system.

Failed connection to the central system

1. From the PC, verify that you can ping your central system using the name or IP address listed in iSeries Navigator as your central system. If this is unsuccessful then there is something wrong with either your network, or your DNS or host table. You must fix this before you can connect.
2. From the central system, make sure that you can ping your PC using the IP address of your PC. If this is unsuccessful, you will not be able to use some of the Management Central functions. For more information, see the Information Center experience report, "Configuring Management Central Connections for Firewall Environments".
3. Verify the central system connection. (From iSeries Navigator expand **My Connections** → **Right-click the system that is your central system** → **Verify Connections**.) If this reports any errors, click **Details**. This opens a window that displays information about what happened.
4. Use the Verify Connection function that is located under Management Central to further trouble shoot the problem. (From iSeries Navigator right-click **Management Central** → **Verify Connection**.) If this reports any errors, click **Details**. This opens a window that displays information about what happened.

What to do if you still cannot connect

If you still cannot connect use the following procedure to further troubleshoot the problem:

1. Verify that the Management Central server QYPSJSVR is running on the Central System.
 - a. From iSeries Navigator, expand **My Connections** → **system (that you are using as the central system)** → **Network** → **Servers** → **TCP/IP**.
 - b. Look at the Management Central item to see if the server is started. If necessary, right-click Management Central under TCP/IP, and click **Start**.
 - c. If the server still fails to start, view the job logs for possible problems, or continue with the next items to check for some common problems that can cause the servers not to start.
2. Check the TCP/IP configuration on the central system.

It is important that the Central System is able to ping itself using both the fully qualified domain name and the short name. If pinging either of these names fails, you will need to add the name and IP address to either the system's host table or DNS. Make sure that the IP address used in these pings is one that the PC can contact.
3. If you are using SSL with Management Central, verify that it is set up correctly. Make sure to configure your Central System, all your endpoint systems, as well as iSeries Navigator on your PC.
4. Check the QSECOFR profile.
 - a. Management Central requires a profile with *ALLOBJ and *SECOFR authority enabled, and a valid password must be set so that it does not expire.

Important: You must make this change via the character-based interface, otherwise the system might not be able to read the file.

By default, Management Central uses the QSECOFR profile. Thus if this default has not been changed, then you can enable QSECOFR and set the password to never expire. (If you choose not to set the password to never expire then you must be diligent about keeping the password active. This is done by always changing the current password **before** it expires.) If you are using a customized profile other than QSECOFR then enable it and set the password to never expire. To change QSECOFR, open the properties file: `"/QIBM/UserData/OS400/MGTC/config/`

McConfig.properties". Change the parameter "QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID = QSECOFR" to "QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID = YOURPROFILE" (where YOURPROFILE is the profile name replacing QSECOFR).

b. Or you can run

```
CALL PGM(QSYS/QYPSCONFIG) PARM(xxxx 'yyyy')
```

where xxxx is QYPSJ_SYSTEM_ID and yyyy is the name of the profile to be used.

5. If both of the Management Central servers on the central system are started successfully and you have done the above troubleshooting, but you still cannot connect from iSeries Navigator, then most likely the problem is either TCP/IP configuration related, or firewall related. In either case, use the Configuring Management Central Connections for Firewall Environments experience report to troubleshoot this problem. A few important notes are listed below:
- The Central System needs to be able to initiate a connection with iSeries Navigator on the PC, so it is important that the Central System can ping the IP address of the PC.
 - The PC needs to be able to initiate a connection with iSeries Navigator that is using the following IPs:
 - The name or IP being used as the central system name in iSeries Navigator (the name of the system under my connections).
 - The IP address that the central system gets when it pings itself.

Note: The initial connection to the central system uses the name or IP specified in iSeries Navigator for the central system. However during this initial connection, the central system discovers its own IP address and sends that IP to the PC. The PC uses that IP address for all further communications. The ports that Management Central uses need to be open in any firewalls that are being used.

Failed connection from PC to the central system

1. Right-click Management Central and run Verify Connection.
2. Make sure that the single socket layer (SSL) for the Management Central servers is turned on. Look in /qibm/userdata/os400/mgtc/config/McConfig.properties and confirm that QYPS_SSL>1 or QYPS_AUTH_LEVEL>1. If you change these values, remember to restart the Management Central servers.
3. If you are running OS/400 V5R2, did the QYPSSRV job fail to start? If it failed to start then the Digital Certificate Manager (DCM) configuration was not done correctly. Make sure that you have assigned your certificate the Management Central Application identification as well as the host server IDs.
4. Is there a padlock icon next to the central system? If not, then the client is not using SSL to connect. Under My Connections, right-click the central system, go to the Secure Sockets tab, and then choose to use SSL. Then click **OK**. You must close iSeries Navigator and restart it before this value takes affect.
5. On that same Secure Sockets tab as mentioned in step 3, there is a button to Download the CA to your PC. Make sure that you have done this, using the operating system that you CREATED the CA on (not necessarily the central system).
6. On the same Secure Sockets tab mentioned in the above bullet, there is a Verify SSL Connection. Run this and look at the results.
7. If you are running OS/400 V5R2 verify that the file QIBM\ProdData\OS400\Java400\jdk\lib\security\java.security has the following properties defined as these can cause a connection problem.
 - os400.jdk13.jst.factories=true
 - ssl.SocketFactory.provider=com.sun.net.ssl.internal.ssl.SSLSocketFactoryImpl
8. If you are running OS/400 V5R2 on the client, on your PC, look at c:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Documents\ibm\client access\classes\com\ibm\as400\access\KeyRing.class. Is it size 0? If so, delete the file and download the Certificate Authority.

Failed connection from central system to endpoint

In addition to following the steps for troubleshooting a failed connection from the PC to the central system, you should also view the job log on the central system. It should give a reason for why the connection was rejected. (For example: (CPFB918) Connection to system mysystem.mydomain.com rejected. Authentication level 0. Reason Code 99. This means that the SSL is not active for the endpoint. Instead, it is at authentication level 0.) You can find the meanings for negative reason codes in /QSYS.LIB/QSYSINC.LIB/H.FILE/SSL.MBR.

Note: Endpoint systems do not require a padlock.

Additional considerations

Firewall considerations

All communication is TCP initiated from the PC to the central system. You can specify the exact port to use by adding the following line to the C:\MgmtCtrl.properties file:

```
QYPSJ_LOCAL_PORT=xxxx
```

where *xxxx* is the port number. The port number should be greater than 1024 and less than 65535. Additionally, the port number must not be used by another application on the PC. The port must be open through the firewall. Should the firewall require it, all sockets must be open.

Working with Management Central monitors

Management Central monitors can be used to check your system performance, your jobs and servers, your message queues, and changes to selected files.

You can specify thresholds for various metrics on these monitors, and then specify actions to be taken whenever a monitor detects that a threshold has been triggered. For example, you can run an i5/OS command or start a program when the threshold is triggered. For specific examples that describe how you can use these monitors, see the related concept Scenarios: Performance.

You can use a *system monitor* to see detailed graphs that monitor the real-time performance of multiple i5/OS operating system. In the Graph History window, you can see a graphical view of the metrics that have been collected for an extended period of time by Collection Services. You can contrast this data with the real-time data for the last hour shown in a System Monitor window.

You can monitor your jobs and servers with a *job monitor*. For example, you might want to monitor a job's CPU usage, job status, or job log messages. For each of those metrics, you can specify a threshold and actions to take when that threshold is triggered. For example, you could set up your monitor to send a message to the system operator whenever the CPU usage exceeds a certain threshold. In addition to the i5/OS commands, you can use the Advanced Job Scheduler Send Distribution using JS (SNDDSTJS) command to notify someone by e-mail when the threshold is exceeded, if the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program 5722-JS1 is installed on the endpoint system.

You can create a *message monitor* to take action on a list of messages that are important to you. For example, when the message monitor detects CPI0953 (threshold of a disk pool is exceeded), you could specify to run a command that deletes objects that you no longer need from the disk pool.

You can use a *file monitor* to monitor for a specified text string or for a specified size. Or, you can monitor for any modification to one or more selected files. You can select one or more files to be monitored, or you can select the History log option, which will monitor the i5/OS history log (QHST).

| **Note:** Integrated file system treats QSYS physical files as directories, with the physical file members
| actually treated as files.

You can use a *B2B activity monitor* to view a graph of active transactions over time, and you can run commands automatically when thresholds are triggered. You can search for and display a specific transaction as well as view a bar graph of the detailed steps of that specific transaction.

You can start any Management Central monitor, and then turn to other tasks on your server, in iSeries Navigator, or on your PC. You can choose to be informed by an audible or visible alarm on your PC when important thresholds are reached. The monitor will continue to run and perform any threshold commands or actions you specified. Your monitor will run until you decide to stop it. You can view all your monitors, as well as all your Management Central tasks, remotely with iSeries Navigator for Wireless.

In the Management Central properties, you can specify whether you want the central system to automatically attempt to restart your monitors on endpoint systems where they failed to start. If you select to have the system automatically attempt to restart your monitors, you may also specify how long you want the central system to keep trying to restart the monitors and how often you want the system to try during that time period. For example, if you want the system to try to restart monitors every five minutes for a period of 3 hours, you can select **Automatically restart monitors on failed systems**, and then specify 180 minutes for **How long to attempt restart** and 5 minutes for **How often to attempt restart**.

The steps to create and run a monitor are basically the same for whichever type of monitor you choose to run.

To view or download a PDF version of this topic, select **Working with Management Central monitors** (about 194 KB)

Monitor concepts

Monitors can display real-time performance data. Additionally, they can continually monitor your system in order to run a selected command when a specified threshold is reached. Find out how monitors work, what they can monitor, and how they can respond to a given performance situation.

The system monitors display the data stored in the collection objects that are generated and maintained by Collection Services. The system monitors display data as it is collected, for up to one hour. To view longer periods of data, you should use Graph history. You can change the frequency of the data collection in the monitor properties. The settings in the monitor properties override the settings in Collection Services.

You can use monitors to track and research many different elements of system performance and can have many different monitors running simultaneously. When used together, the monitors provide a sophisticated tool for observing and managing system performance. For example, when implementing a new interactive application, you might use a system monitor to prioritize a job's resource utilization, a job monitor to watch for and handle any problematic jobs, and a message monitor to alert you if a specified message occurs on any of your systems.

Setting thresholds and actions

When you create a new monitor, you can specify actions you want to occur when the system metric reaches a specified threshold level, or an event occurs. When threshold levels or events occur, you can choose to run an i5/OS command on the endpoint systems, such as sending a message or holding a job queue. Additionally, you may choose to have the monitor carry out several predefined actions such as updating the event log and alerting you by either sounding an alarm on your PC or starting the monitor. Finally, you can automatically reset the monitor by specifying a second threshold level, which causes the monitor to resume normal activity when it is reached.

Management collection objects

Collection Services stores data for each collection in a single collection object from which you can create as many different sets of database files as you need. This introductory topic explains the management collection object, when it is created, and how the available Collection Services settings affect these objects.

A *management collection object* (also known as *MGTCOL) serves as an efficient storage medium to hold large quantities of performance data. Once you have configured and started Collection Services, performance data is continuously collected and stored in these objects. Then, when you need to work with performance data you can use the data that is stored in these objects to populate performance database files.

Each *MGTCOL object has one of these attributes:

*PFR (detailed data)

*MGTCOL objects that have the *PFR attribute can become quite large. Their size depends on the number of active jobs in the system, performance metrics being collected, and the collection interval. Data in this type of object support the Performance Management for System i5 performance metrics and reflect all of the requested system performance data. The **Location to**

store collections field that is located on the Collection Services Properties window displays the library in which the *PFR objects are located. The job QYSPFRCOL collects and stores this data in this object.

The collection is cycled (a new *PFR object is created) at least once in a 24 hour period and the QYSPFRCOL job writes the performance data into the new object. You can schedule this to happen more frequently.

When Performance Management for System i5 is running, the *PFR objects are placed in the QMPGDATA library. If you are not using Performance Management for System i5, then the *PFR objects are placed in the QPFRDATA library. These are default settings.

Note: If you use the Create Database Files Now option you can specify a different library, however this does not change the default setting. All subsequent files will be written to the QMPGDATA (or the QPFRDATA) library.

***PFRDTL (graph data)**

Graph history and system monitors use *MGTCOL objects that have the *PFRDTL attribute. These objects are stored in the QMGTC2 library. The *PFRDTL object supports second and third level detail for the top twenty uses of the metric and the data retains the same interval by which it was collected.

The collection is cycled (a new *PFRDTL object is created) at least once in a 24 hour period and the job QYMEPFRCVT writes the data to a new object. The naming convention for *PFRDTL objects is Q0yyddd00, where yy is the year and ddd is the Julian day of the year. For best results when using the graph history function, you should retain a minimum of seven days of *PFRDTL objects.

***PFRHST (summary data)**

Graph history also uses *MGTCOL objects that have the *PFRHST attribute. These objects are stored in the QMGTC2 library. When the collection is cycled, the QYMEARCPMA job adds the data to the existing *PFRHST object. No detail data or properties data is available. You must start Performance Management for System i5 to enable the summary data fields. The default retention period is one month. The summary data is summarized in one-hour intervals and does not support second and third level details.

Setting the retention period

You can set the retention period for these objects from the Collection Services Properties window.

Management Central → **Endpoint Systems** → **system** → **Configuration and Service** → **Right-click Collection Services** → **Properties**

Viewing collection objects

iSeries Navigator

You can use iSeries Navigator to view *MGTCOL objects with the *PFR attribute.

Management Central → **Endpoint Systems** → **system** → **Configuration and Service** → **Collection Services**

You can also use this method.

My Connections → **system** → **Configuration and Service** → **Collection Services**

| Each object that is listed under the Collection Name is a different management collection object. You can
| right-click the object to see its status and data summary.

| **Character-based interface**

| The following command can be used to view objects for the *PFRHST and the *PFRDTL type collection
| objects in the library QMGTC2:

```
| WRKOBJPDM LIB(QMGTC2) OBJTYPE(*MGTCOL)
```

Job monitors and Collection Services

In order to avoid creating a negative performance impact on your system, you should understand how the different metrics in the job monitor uses Collection Services.

The metrics that are available for a job monitor are:

- Job count
- Job log message
- Job status
- Job numeric values
- Summary numeric values

The data for the job numeric and summary numeric values metrics come from Collection Services. The overhead for obtaining this data is minimal and is not affected by the number of specific jobs that are being monitored. It takes two intervals of Collection services data before the first point or data metric value can be calculated. For example, if the collection interval is 5 minutes it will take more than 5 minutes before the first metric value is known.

The overhead for the job log message and job status metrics is much more costly in terms of the CPU resources required to obtain the information. Additionally, the number of jobs that are being monitored as well as the collection interval, affect the amount of CPU overhead that is required. For example, a job Monitor with a 5 minute interval will have six times the amount of overhead process to complete versus if the collection interval was set to 30 minutes.

The QYRMJOBSEL job

For every job monitor that runs, a QYRMJOBSEL job starts. This topic explains the purpose of the QYRMJOBSEL job and what causes it to end.

The QYRMJOBSEL uses the information that is specified in the General page of the Job Monitor definition (**Management Central** → **Monitors** → **Job** → **Right-click a monitor and click Proprieties**) with Collection Services data (QYPSPFRCOL) to determine what specific jobs need to be monitored. These jobs are then shown in the bottom half of the Job Monitor status window.

Even if only one job is running, QYRMJOBSEL still examines all of the active job data from Collection Services to determine how many jobs are running, if new instances have started or if instances that were running during the previous interval have ended. The QYRMJOBSEL job does this analysis at each interval. Thus, the amount of CPU resource that is needed for QYRMJOBSEL to complete this function is determined by how many active jobs are on the system. The more active jobs, the more jobs for QYRMJOBSEL to analyze.

Additionally, the QYRMJOBSEL job registers with Collection Services the needed probe data, but it cannot provide the notification interval. So it is always at the lowest interval at which Collection Services is running. Thus, a smaller collection interval means that this processing is performed more frequently.

For example, suppose the job monitor server starts a job monitor at 5 minute collection intervals. Then another monitor that is using Collection Services starts, but uses a smaller interval. As a result, the QYRMJOBSEL receives the data at the smaller or more frequent interval. If the smaller interval is 30 seconds, there will be a 10 time increase in the amount of data QYRMJOBSEL processes, thereby increasing the need for CPU resources.

When the job monitor is stopped, its associated QYRMJOBSEL job receives an ENDJOB immediate and terminates with a CPC1125 Completion 50 severity. This is the normal way that the QYRMJOBSEL is removed from the system.

Note: For QYRMJOBSEL to work properly, the Java time zone must be correctly set. This is done by setting the QTIMZON system value.

QZRCSRVS jobs and their impact on performance

Job monitors connect to a QZRCSRVS job for each job that is being monitored for the Job Log Messages and the Job Status metrics. The more jobs that are being monitored for these metrics, the more QZRCSRVS jobs are used.

QZRCSRVS jobs are not Management Central jobs. They are i5/OS TCP Remote Command Server jobs that the Management Central Java server uses for calling commands and APIs. In order to process the API calls for the Job Log Messages and Job Status metrics in a timely fashion within the job monitor's interval length, the APIs are called for each job concurrently at interval time.

When both metrics are specified on the same monitor, two QZRCSRVS jobs are started for each job. For example, if 5 jobs are monitored for Job Log Messages, 5 QZRCSRVS jobs are started to support the monitor. If 5 jobs are monitored for Job Log Messages and Job Status, then 10 QZRCSRVS jobs are started.

Thus, it is recommended that for standard systems, when you are using the Job Log Message and Job Status metrics, you limit the number of jobs monitored on a small system to 40 jobs or less. (With larger systems more jobs may be monitored. However, you need to have a clear understanding of the resources that are used when monitoring more jobs and determine the affordable number to monitor.) Also, severely limit using these two metrics for monitoring subsystems, as doing so can cause a large number of QZRCSRVS jobs to run. (A job monitor that uses just the other metrics and does not use Job Status or Job Log Message, does not use QZRCSRVS jobs.)

Tuning QZRCSRVS jobs

For jobs that pass work to the QZRCSRVS jobs, the subsystem that is specified on the QWTPCPUT API determines where the QZRCSRVS jobs run. QWTPCPUT is called during the processing of the QYSMPUT API. This API retrieves the subsystem information from the QUSRSYS/QYSMSVRE *USRIDX object and uses it on the QWTPCPUT call. As shipped, QZRCSRVS jobs are prestart jobs that run in the QUSRWRK subsystem and this is where the connections are routed.

If you end the prestart jobs in QUSRWRK with the ENDPJ command, then the QZRCSRVS jobs start as batch-immediate jobs in the QSYSWRK subsystem whenever a connection is requested. No jobs start in advance of the connection.

You can configure your system so that prestart jobs can be run from any subsystem. You can also configure your system to prevent batch-immediate jobs from being used at all. If the job monitor server jobs are calling Java Toolbox functions to pass work to QZRCSRVS, then they are using the QYSMPUT API, and the work must run in whichever subsystem is stored in the user index.

QZRCSRVS cleanup

A cleanup thread runs once an hour to determine whether a QZRCSRVS job is still being used by a Job Monitor. It determines if the job was used at least twice within the maximum job monitor interval length. If the job is not used during the previous two hours, it is ended. Java time stamps are used for this comparison, so it is imperative that the time zone value used by Java is correct (system value QTIMZON).

QZRCSRVS jobs are automatically removed two hours after the job it supports ends. Likewise QZRCSRVS jobs will end if the Job Monitor that created them stops, or if Management Central ends.

Note: Since the Management Central Job Monitor monitors active jobs, you might see messages like "Internal job identifier no longer valid" in the QZRCSRVS job. This normally happens when a monitored job with Job Log Messages or the Job Status metric ends while the monitor is running.

Special considerations

When working with Management Central monitors, you need to consider these special points.

Special considerations when working with job monitors

- The Job Count metric monitors the number of active jobs that match the job selection criteria during a collection interval.
- The Job Monitor window (**Management Central** → **Monitors** → **Job** → **Right-click a job monitor** → **Open**) shows jobs that meet the criteria even if the jobs are no longer active at the end of the interval. Collection services provides information that determines the job count as well as the jobs to display in the window. This data contains information about all of the jobs that are active during that interval. Nevertheless, it is possible that if a job uses negligible CPU, then information about that job is not passed to the job monitor and so it does not appear in the count or the detail status display.
- For the metrics Job Status and Job Log Message if a job monitor triggers it continues to display those jobs that created the condition even if a job has ended and is not active during the interval. For this condition the job displays with a gray icon, and continues to be displayed until the trigger resets or the monitor restarts.

Special considerations when working with file monitors

- The Text metric monitors for a specific text string. When you use this metric, the File Monitor obtains a shared read lock on the files that it is monitoring. Programs which obtain a shared update lock can update files without interfering with the monitor. However, users, programs and commands (such as the Work with Objects using Programming Development Manager (WRKOBJPDM) command or the Start Source Entry Utility (STRSEU) command) that obtain an exclusive lock will interfere with the file monitor and might cause it to either fail or to not be able to monitor the criteria during each interval.
- A file monitor uses an integrated file system to access the information that it needs about the files that it is monitoring. Integrated file systems treat QSYS physical files as directories. Only the physical file members are actually treated as "files". If you want to monitor the size of the entire contents of the QSYS physical file you must monitor all of the members that it contains (typically a single file member).
For example, to monitor the size of the database file QAYIVDTA in the QMGTC library enter `/qsys.lib/qmgtc.lib/qayivdta.file/qayivdta.mbr` in the Files To Monitor field (**Management Central** → **Monitors** → **File** → **Right-click a monitor** → **Properties** → **General tab**). You can view the size of the database file from within the iSeries Navigator File System.
- The Text metric is the only valid metric when monitoring the QHST file.

Special considerations when working with system monitors

The V5R3 PTF SI18471 introduced the ability for the central system to try to restart a system monitor regardless of the reason. (Before this PTF, the central system would only restart a system monitor if the failure was due to a connection failure with the endpoint and if the monitor was still in a started status. This meant that only monitors with multiple endpoints that suffered connection failures were restarted.) To use this feature the following conditions must be met:

- The central system must be running release V5R4 or later. (This capability is also available on V5R3 central systems provided the PTF SI18471 is installed.)
- The keyword &RESTART is in the name of system monitor.
- The Management Central property **Automatically restart monitors on failed systems** is checked. (Right-click Management Central → Properties → Connection tab)

Creating a new monitor

Creating a new monitor is a process that begins at the New Monitor window. In iSeries Navigator, expand Management Central, expand **Monitors**, right-click the type of monitor you want to create (for example, **Job**), and then click **New Monitor**.

After you have given your new monitor a name, the next step is to specify what you want to monitor. If you are creating a job monitor, you will select which jobs you want to monitor. Be careful to monitor the smallest number of jobs that will give you the information you need. Monitoring a large number of jobs may have a performance impact on your system.

You can specify the jobs to monitor in these ways:

Jobs to monitor

You can specify jobs by their job name, job user, job type and subsystem. When specifying job name, job user and subsystem, you can use an asterisk (*) as a wildcard to represent one or more characters.

Servers to monitor

You can specify jobs by their server names. Select from the list of **Available servers** on the **Servers to monitor** tab. You can also specify a custom server by clicking the **Add custom server** button on the New Monitor or Monitor Properties - General page under the **Servers to monitor** tab. To create a custom server, use the Change Job (QWTCHGJB) API

When multiple job selection criteria are specified, all jobs matching any of the criteria are monitored.

Selecting the metrics

For each type of monitor, Management Central offers several measurements, known as *metrics*, to help you pinpoint different aspects of system activity. A metric is a measurement of a particular characteristic of a system resource or the performance of a program or a system.

For a *system monitor*, you can select from a wide range of available metrics, such as CPU utilization, interactive response time, transaction rate, disk arm utilization, disk storage, disk IOP utilization, and more.

For a *message monitor*, you can specify one or more message IDs, message types, severity levels. You can also select from a list of predefined sets of messages that are associated with a specific type of problem, such as a communications link problem, a cabling or hardware problem, or a modem problem.

For a *file monitor*, you can select to monitor files across multiple endpoint systems for a specified text string or for a specified size. Or, you can select to trigger an event whenever a specified file has been modified. You can select one or more files to be monitored, or you can select the **History log** option, which will monitor the i5/OS history log (QHST).

For a *job monitor*, available metrics include job count, job status, job log messages, CPU utilization, logical I/O rate, disk I/O rate, communications I/O rate, transaction rate, and more.

The Metrics page in the New Monitor window allows you to view and change the metrics that you want to monitor. To access this page, click **Monitors**, right-click the type of monitor you want to create (for example, **Job**), and then click **New Monitor**. Fill in the required fields, and then click the **Metrics** tab.

Use the online help to assist you in selecting your metrics. Remember to specify threshold values that allow you to be notified and to specify actions to be taken when a certain value (called the trigger value) is reached.

System monitor metrics

Metrics that you can use in a system monitor include the following:

Table 17. System monitor metric definitions

Name	Description
CPU Utilization (Average)	The percentage of available processing unit time that is being consumed by all jobs, threads of a job, and Licensed Internal Code tasks on the system. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs or tasks with the highest CPU utilization.
CPU Utilization (Interactive Jobs)	The percentage of available processing unit time that is being consumed on the system for all jobs which include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A 5250 workstation that includes a Twinax attached remote line and local area network (LAN) line Systems Network Architecture (SNA) attached line that includes SNA display station pass-through All Telnet sessions, for example, LAN, IBM Personal Communications, iSeries Access PC5250, and other SNA or Telnet emulators Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 interactive jobs (5250 jobs) with the highest CPU utilization.
CPU Utilization (Interactive Feature)	The percentage of available interactive capability. The model number of your server (and for some models, the optional interactive feature card) determines the interactive capability of your system. It is possible to operate at greater than 100% of your available interactive capability. However, optimal system performance is achieved by maintaining an interactive workload that does not exceed the 100% level for extended periods. A recommended range should be approximately equal to or less than 70%. Click any collection point in the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest CPU contributing to this workload.
CPU Utilization Basic (Average)	The percentage of available processing unit time that is being consumed by all jobs on the system. This metric includes the same work as CPU Utilization (Average) but does not include active job details. No additional data is available for this metric. You save system resource by not tracking the more detailed information.
CPU Utilization (Secondary Workloads)	The percentage of available processing unit time that is being consumed by secondary workloads running on your dedicated server. For example, if your system is a dedicated server for Domino, Domino work is considered the primary workload. CPU Utilization (Secondary Workloads) shows the available processing unit time that is being consumed by any work other than Domino work on your server and can include WebSphere Java and general Java servlets that run as Domino applications. No additional data is available for this metric.

Table 17. System monitor metric definitions (continued)

CPU Utilization (Database Capability)	The percentage of available database capability that is being consumed by i5/OS database functions on your system, which includes file I/O, SQL, and general query functions. The model number and features of your system determine the amount of CPU available for database processing on your system. A recommended range should be approximately equal to or less than CPU Utilization (Average). Click any collection point in the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest database CPU utilization.
Interactive Response Time (Average)	The average response time, in seconds, being experienced by 5250 interactive jobs on the system. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest response time.
Interactive Response Time (Maximum)	The maximum response time, in seconds, that has been experienced by any 5250 interactive job on the system during the collection interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest response time.
Transaction Rate (Average)	The number of transactions that are being completed per second by all active jobs on the system. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest transaction rate.
Transaction Rate (Interactive)	The number of transactions that are being completed per second on the system by active 5250 jobs, which include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A 5250 workstation that includes a Twinax attached remote line and local area network (LAN) line • Systems Network Architecture (SNA) attached line that includes SNA display station pass-through • All Telnet sessions, for example, LAN, IBM Personal Communications, iSeries Access PC5250, and other SNA or Telnet emulators Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 jobs with the highest transaction rate.
Batch Logical Database I/O	The average number of logical database input/output (I/O) operations being performed per second by all non-5250 batch jobs on the system. A logical I/O operation occurs when data is transferred between the system and application I/O buffers. This metric indicates how much work your batch jobs are performing during any given interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the 20 batch jobs with the highest number of logical database I/O operations per second.
Disk Arm Utilization (Average)	The average percentage of all disk arm capacity that was utilized on the system during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the disk arms on the system are during the current interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each disk arm.
Disk Arm Utilization (Maximum)	The maximum percentage of capacity that was utilized by any disk arm on the system during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the disk arms on the system are during the current interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each disk arm.
Disk Storage (Average)	The average percentage of storage that was full on all disk arms during the collection interval. This metric shows how full the disk arms on the system are during the current interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the percentage of storage that was full on each disk arm.
Disk Storage (Maximum)	The maximum percentage of storage that was full on any disk arm on the system during the collection interval. This metric shows how full the disk arms on the system are during the current interval. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the percentage of storage that was full on each disk arm.

Table 17. System monitor metric definitions (continued)

Disk IOP Utilization (Average)	The average utilization of all the disk input/output processors (IOPs) during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the disk IOPs on the system are during the current interval. Multifunction IOPs can perform both Disk and Communication I/O work and can therefore be reported under either or both categories. If they performed work in both areas, the division of utilization is unknown and is reported fully under each category. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each input/output processor (IOP).
Disk IOP Utilization (Maximum)	The maximum utilization of any disk input/output processor (IOP) during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the disk IOPs on the system are during the current interval. Multifunction IOPs can perform both Disk and Communication I/O work and can therefore be reported under either or both categories. If they performed work in both areas, the division of utilization is unknown and is reported fully under each category. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each input/output processor (IOP).
Communications IOP Utilization (Average)	The average utilization of all the communications input/output processors (IOPs) during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the communications IOPs on the system are during the current interval. Multifunction IOPs can perform both Disk and Communication I/O work and can therefore be reported under either or both categories. If they performed work in both areas, the division of utilization is unknown and is reported fully under each category. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each input/output processor (IOP).
Communications IOP Utilization (Maximum)	The maximum utilization of any communications input/output processor (IOP) during the collection interval. This metric shows how busy the communications IOPs on the system are during the current interval. Multifunction IOPs can perform both Disk and Communication I/O work and can therefore be reported under either or both categories. If they performed work in both areas, the division of utilization is unknown and is reported fully under each category. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each input/output processor (IOP).
Communications Line Utilization (Average)	The average amount of data that was actually sent and received for all non-LAN lines that are active during the time you collect data. Line utilization is an approximation of the actual amount of data transmitted compared with the theoretical limit of the lines based on the line speed settings in the line descriptions. The communication lines included on this monitor are one of the following line types: Bisync, Async, IDLC, X25, LAPD, SDLC, or PPP. This metric shows how actively the system is using its communication lines. If you have communications lines, such as fax lines, that are very busy much of the time, you may want to exclude these heavily utilized lines from the system monitor graph. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each line on the system.
Communications Line Utilization (Maximum)	The maximum amount of data that was actually sent and received for all non-LAN lines that are active during the time you collect data. Line utilization is an approximation of the actual amount of data transmitted compared with the theoretical limit of the line based on its line speed setting in the line description. The communication lines included on this monitor are one of the following line types: Bisync, Async, IDLC, X25, LAPD, SDLC, or PPP. This metric shows how actively the system is using its communication lines. If you have communications lines, such as fax lines, that are very busy much of the time, you may want to exclude these heavily utilized lines from the system monitor graph. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each line on the system.

Table 17. System monitor metric definitions (continued)

LAN Utilization (Average)	The average amount of data that was actually sent and received on all local area network (LAN) lines in the system, compared with the theoretical limit of the lines based on the line speed settings in the line descriptions. The LAN lines included on this monitor are one of the following line types: token-ring or Ethernet. This metric shows how actively the system is using its LAN lines. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each line on the system.
LAN Utilization (Maximum)	The maximum amount of data that was actually sent and received on any local area network (LAN) line in the system, compared with the theoretical limit of the line based on its line speed setting in the line description. The LAN lines included on this monitor run one of the following line types: token-ring or Ethernet. This metric shows how actively the system is using its LAN lines. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the utilization of each line on the system.
Machine Pool Faults	The average number of faults per second that occur in the machine pool of the system during the time you collect the data. Only Licensed Internal Code runs in the machine pool. This metric shows the level of faulting activity in the system's machine pool. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the number of faults per second in the system's machine pool.
User Pool Faults (Average)	The average number of faults per second occurring in all of the user pools on the system during the time you collect the data. This metric shows how much faulting activity is occurring in the system's user pools. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the number of faults per second in each auxiliary storage pool.
User Pool Faults (Maximum)	The maximum number of faults per second occurring in all of the user pools on the system during the time you collect the data. This metric shows how much faulting activity is occurring in the system's user pools. Click any collection point on the graph to see a Details chart that shows the number of faults per second in each auxiliary storage pool.

Job monitor metrics

You can use any metric, a group of metrics, or all the metrics from the list to be included in your monitor. Metrics you can use in a job monitor include the following:

Table 18. Job monitor metric definitions

Name	Description
Job Count	Monitor for a specific number of jobs matching the job selection.
Job Status	Monitor for jobs in any selected status, such as Completed, Disconnected, Ending, Held while running, or Initial thread held. Remember: Metrics for job status can affect performance. Limit the number of jobs that you are monitoring to 40.
Job Log Messages	Monitor for messages based on any combination of Message ID, Type, and Minimum severity.

Job numeric values

Table 19. Job numeric values definition

Name	Description
------	-------------

Table 19. Job numeric values definition (continued)

CPU Utilization	The percentage of available processing unit time used by all jobs that are included by this monitor on this system.
Logical I/O Rate	The number of logical I/O actions, per second, by each job that is being monitored on this system.
Disk I/O Rate	The average number of I/O operations, per second, performed by each job that is being monitored on this system. The value in this column is the sum of the asynchronous and synchronous disk I/O operations.
Communications I/O Rate	The number of communications I/O actions, per second, by each job that is being monitored on this system.
Transaction Rate	The number of transactions per second by each job that is being monitored on this system.
Transaction Time	The total transaction time for each job that is being monitored on this system.
Thread Count	The number of active threads in each job that is being monitored on this system.
Page Fault Rate	The average number of times, per second, that an active program in each job that is being monitored on this system refers to an address that is not in main storage.

Summary numeric values

Table 20. Summary numeric values definition

Name	Description
CPU Utilization	The percentage of available processing unit time used by all jobs monitored on this system. For multiple-processor systems, this is the average percent busy for all processors.
Logical I/O Rate	The number of logical I/O actions, per second, by all jobs monitored on this system.
Disk I/O Rate	The average number of I/O operations, per second, performed by all jobs monitored on this system. The value in this column is the sum of the asynchronous and synchronous disk I/O operations.
Communications I/O Rate	The number of communications I/O actions, per second, by all jobs monitored on this system.
Transaction Rate	The number of transactions per second by all jobs monitored on this system.
Transaction Time	The total transaction time for all jobs monitored on this system.
Thread Count	The number of active threads for all jobs monitored on this system.

Table 20. Summary numeric values definition (continued)

Page Fault Rate	The average number of times, per second, that active programs in all jobs monitored on this system refer to an address that is not in main storage.
-----------------	---

Specifying the threshold values

Setting a threshold for a metric that is being collected by a monitor allows you to be notified and, optionally, to specify actions to be taken when a certain value (called the *trigger value*) is reached. You can also specify actions to be taken when a second value (called the *reset value*) is reached.

For example, when you create a system monitor, you can specify an i5/OS command that stops any new jobs from starting when CPU utilization reaches 90% and another i5/OS command that allows new jobs to start when CPU utilization falls to less than 70%.

For some metrics, it is appropriate to specify a reset value, which resets the threshold and allows it to be triggered again when the trigger value is reached. For those thresholds, you can specify a command to be run when the reset value is reached. For other metrics (such as the File Status metric and the Text metric on file monitors, and any message set on a message monitor), you can specify to automatically reset the threshold when the trigger command is run.

You can set up to two thresholds for each metric that the monitor is collecting. Thresholds are triggered and reset based on the value at the time the metric collection is made. Specifying a higher number of collection intervals in the Duration field helps to avoid unnecessary threshold activity due to frequent spiking of values.

You can also choose to add an event to the Event Log whenever the trigger value or the reset value is reached.

On the New Monitor - Metrics page, the threshold tabs provide a place for you to specify a threshold value for each metric that you have selected to monitor. For example, if you are creating a job monitor, you can set your threshold values in the following ways depending on the type of metric you have selected:

Job Count	<p>When you define a threshold, you can specify a command to run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. For example, selecting → 25 jobs will trigger the threshold whenever the monitor detects more than 25 jobs running during the number of collection intervals you specify for Duration.</p> <p>You can then specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the monitor detects more than 25 jobs. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command. For more detailed information and examples of specifying commands to be run when thresholds are triggered, see the performance scenarios topic.</p> <p>Enable reset is optional, and cannot be selected until a trigger is defined. You can also specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset.</p>

Job Log Message	<p>You must select Trigger when any of the following messages are sent to the job log before you can specify the conditions to trigger a threshold. You can specify messages to monitor for based on any combination of Message ID, Type, and Minimum severity. Each row in the Job Log Message table shows a combination of criteria that must be met for a message to trigger a threshold. A threshold will be triggered if it meets the criteria in at least one row. Use the online help to specify the conditions to trigger a threshold.</p> <p>Be careful to monitor the smallest number of jobs that will give you the information you need. Monitoring a large number of jobs for job log messages may have a performance impact on your system.</p> <p>You can specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command.</p> <p>Be sure to click the Collection Interval tab to specify how often you want the monitor to check for job log messages.</p> <p>A message trigger can only be manually reset. You can specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset. When you reset the monitor, you always have the option to reset without running the specified command.</p>
Job Status	<p>On the Metrics - General tab, select the statuses that you want to monitor for. Click the Metrics - Status Threshold tab to specify the conditions to trigger a threshold. You must select Trigger when job is in any selected status before you can specify the conditions to trigger a threshold. The threshold is triggered whenever the monitor detects that the job is in any selected status for the number of collection intervals you specify for Duration.</p> <p>You can then specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command.</p> <p>Reset when job is not in selected statuses is optional, and cannot be selected until a trigger is defined. You can specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset.</p>
Job Numeric Values	<p>When you define the threshold, you can specify a command to run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. For example, selecting → 101 transactions per second for the Transaction Rate metric will trigger the threshold whenever the monitor detects more than 101 transactions per second on any of the selected jobs during the number of collection intervals you specify for Duration.</p> <p>You can then specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the monitor detects more than 101 transactions per second. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command.</p> <p>Enable reset is optional, and cannot be selected until a trigger is defined. You can also specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset.</p>

<p>Summary Numeric Values (total for all jobs)</p>	<p>When you define a threshold, you can specify a command to run on the endpoint system when the threshold is triggered. For example, selecting → 1001 transactions per second for the Transaction Rate metric will trigger the threshold whenever the monitor detects more than 1001 transactions per second on all of the selected jobs during the number of collection intervals you specify for Duration.</p> <p>You can then specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the monitor detects more than 1001 transactions per second. Enter the command name and click Prompt for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command.</p> <p>Enable reset is optional, and cannot be selected until a trigger is defined. You can also specify a command to be run on the endpoint system when the threshold is reset.</p>
--	---

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview → Management Central**.

Specifying the collection interval

When you are setting thresholds for the metrics you have selected to monitor, you should consider how often you want the data to be collected.

Click the **Collection Interval** tab to select whether to use the same collection interval for all metrics, or to use different collection intervals for each metric type. For example, you may want to collect job count data every 30 seconds, but you may want to collect the job log message data every 5 minutes because job log message data typically takes longer to collect than job count data.

If you want to monitor numeric and status metrics for less than 5 minutes, you must select **Use different collection interval**.

Note: The job count, job numeric values, and summary numeric values metrics must have an equal or lesser collection interval than the collection interval for the job status metric.

- | To specify the number of collection intervals for each threshold, click the **Metrics** tab and indicate the
- | number of intervals in the **Duration** field.

Specifying threshold run commands

A *threshold* is a setting for a metric that is being collected by a monitor. *Threshold commands* run automatically on your endpoint system when threshold events occur. Threshold commands are different from any threshold actions you may have set. Threshold actions happen on your PC or central system, while threshold commands run on your endpoint systems.

Using threshold commands

Threshold settings are used to automate any i5/OS command you want to run when thresholds are triggered or reset. For example, suppose you are running a job monitor and a certain batch job that is supposed to complete before the first shift begins is still running at 6:00 a.m. To accomplish this, you can set up Threshold 1 to send a page command to a system operator to look at it. You can also set up Threshold 2 to send a command to end the job if it is still running at 7:00 a.m.

In another situation, you might want to notify your operators with a page command when the job monitor detects that the wait time values for the FTP and HTTP servers have reached a median level. If the FTP server jobs end, you can restart the server with a start server command (such as STRTCPSVR *FTP). You can set thresholds and specify commands to automatically handle many different situations. In short, you can use threshold commands in any way that makes sense for your environment.

How do I set threshold commands?

On the New Monitor-Metrics page, click the **Thresholds** tab to enable your thresholds. Before you can set any threshold commands, you must turn your thresholds on by selecting the **Enable trigger** (or similarly named) option. You can then use this window to enter any commands you want to run when the threshold trigger value is reached. Select the **Enable reset** (or similarly named) option if you want to specify a command to run when the threshold reset value is reached.

Management Central monitors allow you to specify any batch commands to run on the server when the threshold is triggered or reset. You can enter an i5/OS command name and click **Prompt** (or press F4) for assistance in specifying the parameters for the command. You can even use replacement variables (such as &TIME or &NUMCURRENT) to pass information to the command, such as the time and actual value of the metric.

Specifying event logging and actions

When you have specified the threshold values for your monitor, you can click the **Actions** tab to select event logging and the PC actions to be taken when a threshold is triggered or reset.

Some of the actions you can select are:

Table 21. Actions that you can select

Action	Description
Log event	Adds an entry to the event log on the central system when the threshold is triggered or reset. The entry includes the date and time the event occurred, the endpoint system being monitored, the metric being collected, and the monitor that logged the event.
Open event log	Displays the event log when an event occurs.
Open monitor	Displays a list of systems that are being monitored for the specified metrics and a list of the values for the specified metrics as they are collected for each system.
Sound alarm	Sounds an alarm on the PC when the threshold for the monitor is triggered.
Run i5/OS command	If you have specified a server command to run when the threshold for this monitor is triggered or reset, those commands run only during times that actions are applied. This option cannot be changed from the Actions page. If you do not want the command to run, you can remove the command from the Metrics page. Whenever you manually reset a threshold, you can select whether to run the specified reset command.

When you have specified the actions that you want to take when a threshold value is reached, you are ready to specify when to apply the thresholds and actions you have selected.

How to read the event log

The Event log window displays a list of threshold trigger and reset events for all of your monitors. You can specify on the Monitor Properties - Actions page for each monitor whether you want events added to the Event Log. To see the Properties pages for any monitor, select the monitor in the Monitors list and then select Properties from the File menu.




The list of events is arranged in order by date and time by default, but you can change the order by clicking on any column heading. For example, to sort the list by the endpoint system where the event occurred, click System.

An icon to the left of each event indicates the type of event:

Table 22. Icons and meanings they indicate

Icon	Description
------	-------------

Table 22. Icons and meanings they indicate (continued)

	Indicates that this event is a trigger event for which you did not specify a server command to be run when the threshold was triggered.
	Indicates that this event is a trigger event for which you specified a server command to be run when the threshold was triggered.
	Indicates that this event is a threshold reset event.

You can customize the list of events to include only those that meet specific criteria by selecting **Options** from the menu bar and then selecting **Include**.

You can specify which columns of information you want to display in the list and the order in which you want the columns to be displayed by selecting **Options** from the menu bar and then selecting **Columns**.

You can view the properties of an event to get more information about what triggered the event log entry.

You can have more than one Event Log window open at the same time, and you can work with other windows while the Event Log windows are open. Event Log windows are updated continuously as events occur.

Applying thresholds and actions for a monitor

When you have specified your threshold values and chosen to log events, you can select whether to always apply these thresholds and actions, or to apply them only on the days and times you choose.

- | **Note:** Because system monitors run continuously, the following information does not apply. If you select to apply thresholds and actions during specified times, you must select the starting time and the stopping time. If the central system is in a different time zone from the endpoint system, you should be aware that the thresholds and actions will be applied when the starting time is reached on the endpoint system that you are monitoring. You must also select at least one day that you want the thresholds and actions to apply. The thresholds and actions apply from the selected starting time on the selected day until the next occurrence of the stopping time on the endpoint system.

For example, if you want to apply your thresholds and actions overnight on Monday night, you can select 11:00 p.m. as the **From** time and 6:00 a.m. as the **To** time and check **Monday**. The actions that you specified occur whenever the specified thresholds are reached at any time between 11:00 p.m. on Monday and 6:00 a.m. on Tuesday.

Use the online help to finish creating your monitor. The online help also contains instructions on starting your monitor.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Viewing monitor results

When you have specified when to apply the thresholds and actions you have defined for your monitor, you are ready to view your monitor results.

Double-click the monitor name to open the Monitor window. In the Monitor window, you can see the overall status of the monitor and a list of the target systems that the monitor is running on.

- | For job, message and file monitors, a list of the target systems (Summary Area) in the upper pane shows the status of the monitor on each system and the date and time that the monitor data was last collected. The Summary Area also shows additional information related to the specific metrics being collected.

After you select a system, detailed information about what is being monitored on that system is shown in the lower pane. For example, if you are viewing a Job Monitor window, the list of jobs in the lower pane shows the triggered events, the last event that occurred, and the actual values for the specified metrics.

You can select **Columns** from the Options menu to display additional columns of information. Click Help on the Columns window to see a description of each column.

From the list in the lower pane, you can right-click any item and select from a menu of actions that can be performed. For example, if you select a job, you can select reset triggered events, display job properties, hold, release, or end a job.

- | For system monitors, detailed information displays as graphs that you can save and print.

You can view all your monitors, as well as all your iSeries Navigator systems management tasks, remotely with iSeries Navigator for Wireless.

Graph history concepts

Contains a description of the available options for managing and displaying records of performance data.

Graph history displays data contained in the collection objects created by Collection Services. Therefore, the type and amount of data available is dependent on your Collection Services configuration.

The amount of data that is available to be graphed is determined by the settings that you selected from the Collection Services properties, specifically the collection retention period. Use iSeries Navigator to activate PM iSeries over multiple systems. When you activate PM iSeries, you can use the graph history function to see data that was collected days ago, weeks ago, or months ago. You go beyond the realtime monitor capabilities, and have access to summary or detailed data. Without PM iSeries enabled, the graph data field supports 1 to 7 days. With PM iSeries enabled, you define how long your management collection objects remain on the system:

- | • **Detailed data** (attribute type *PFR in QMPGDATA.LIB or QPFRDATA.LIB)
The length of time that management collection objects remain in the file system before they are deleted. You can select a specific time period in hours or days, or you can select **Permanent**. If you select **Permanent**, the management collection objects will not be automatically deleted.
- | • **Graph data** (attribute type *PFRDTL in QMGTC2.LIB)
The length of time that the details and properties data that is shown in the Graph History window remains in the system before it is deleted. If you do not start PM iSeries, you can specify one to seven days. If you do start PM iSeries, you can specify 1 to 30 days. The default is one hour.
- | • **Summary data** (attribute type *PFRHST in QMGTC2.LIB)
The length of time that the data collection points of a graph can be displayed in the Graph History window or remain in the system before they are deleted. No details or properties data is available. You must start PM iSeries to enable the summary data fields. The default is one month. The summary data is summarized in one-hour intervals and does not support second- and third-level details.
- | • **Graph history status**
The Graph History window now displays the graph history status. You also can re-create the graph history data if it is missing.

Viewing graph history

This topic contains step-by-step instructions to view graph history through iSeries Navigator.

About this task

Graph history is included in iSeries Navigator. To view the graph history of the data that you are monitoring with Collection Services, do these steps:

1. Follow the iSeries Navigator online help for starting Collection Services on either a single system or on a system group.
2. From the **Start Collection Services - General** page, select **Start IBM Performance Management for eServer iSeries** if needed.
3. Make changes to the other values for the collection retention period.
4. Click **OK**.
5. You can view the graph history by right-clicking either a system monitor or a Collection Services object and selecting **Graph History**.
6. Click **Refresh** to see the graphical view.

Results

- | **Tip:** If the graph history data is missing, you can re-create it. To re-create the graph history data,
| right-click on the object in iSeries Navigator and choose **Create Graph History Data**.

Once you have launched a graph history, a window displays a series of graphed collection points. These collection points on the graph line are identified by three different graphics that correspond to the three levels of data that are available:

- A square collection point represents data that includes both the detailed information and properties information.
- A triangular collection point represents summarized data that contains detailed information.
- A circular collection point represents data that contains no detailed information or properties information.

| What to do next

- | The system adds data from the active collection object (*PFR attribute) to the *PFRDTL and *PFRHST collection objects when the following occurs:

- | • If the collection object properties is set to add graph data and summary data when cycled, the collection is cycled.
- | • If the already cycled object is selected and the menu option to summarize the data is selected.
- | • If a system monitor is running, then data is added to the *PFRDTL object only, as the system monitor is running.

Resetting triggered threshold for a monitor

When you are viewing the job monitor results, you can reset a triggered threshold.

You can choose to run the server command that was specified as the reset command for this threshold, or you can choose to reset the threshold without running the command.

You can also choose to reset thresholds at the job level, the summary level, the system level, or the monitor level:

Job level	Select one or more jobs in the Job Area of the Job Monitor window. Select File , select Reset with Command or Reset Only , and then select Jobs . The thresholds for the selected jobs will be reset. Other thresholds that have been triggered for this monitor remain in the triggered state.
Summary level	Select one or more systems in the Summary Area of the Job Monitor window. Select File , select Reset with Command or Reset Only , and then select Summary . The thresholds for job count, job numeric values metrics, and summary numeric values metrics will be reset. Other thresholds that have been triggered for this monitor remain in the triggered state.
System level	Select one or more systems in the Summary Area of the Job Monitor window. Select File , select Reset with Command or Reset Only , and then select System . All thresholds for this monitor on the selected systems will be reset. Thresholds for this monitor that have been triggered on other systems remain in the triggered state. Any selections you have made in the Job Area are ignored.
Monitor level	Select File , select Reset with Command or Reset Only , and then select Monitor . All thresholds for this monitor on all systems will be reset. Any selections you have made in the Summary Area or the Job Area are ignored.

Scenarios: iSeries Navigator monitors

Use this information to see how you can use some of the different types of monitors to look at specific aspects of your system's performance.

The monitors included in iSeries Navigator provide a powerful set of tools for researching and managing system performance. For an overview of the types of monitors provided by iSeries Navigator, see iSeries Navigator monitors.

For detailed usage examples and sample configurations, see the following scenarios:

Scenario: System monitor

See an example system monitor that alerts you if the CPU utilization gets too high and temporarily holds any lower priority jobs until more resources become available.

Situation

As a system administrator, you need to ensure that the system has enough resources to meet the current demands of your users and business requirements. For your system, CPU utilization is a particularly important concern. You would like the system to alert you if the CPU utilization gets too high and to temporarily hold any lower priority jobs until more resources become available.

To accomplish this, you can set up a system monitor that sends you a message if CPU utilization exceeds 80%. Moreover, it can also hold all the jobs in the QBATCH job queue until CPU utilization drops to 60%, at which point the jobs are released, and normal operations resume.

Configuration example

To set up a system monitor, you need to define what metrics you want to track and what you want the monitor to do when the metrics reach specified levels. To define a system monitor that accomplishes this goal, complete the following steps:

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central** → **Monitors**, right-click **System Monitor**, and select **New Monitor...**
2. On the **General** page, enter a name and description for this monitor.
3. Click the **Metrics** tab, and enter the following values:

- a. Select the **CPU Utilization Basic (Average)**, from the list of Available Metrics, and click **Add**. CPU Utilization Basic (Average) is now listed under Metrics to monitor, and the bottom portion of the window displays the settings for this metric.
- b. For **Collection interval**, specify how often you would like to collect this data. This will override the Collection Services setting. For this example, specify **30 seconds**.
- c. To change the scale for the vertical axis of the monitor's graph for this metric, change the **Maximum graphing value**. To change the scale for the horizontal axis of the graph for this metric, change the value for **Display time**.
- d. Click the **Threshold 1** tab for the metrics settings, and enter the following values to send an inquiry message if the CPU Utilization is greater than or equal to 80%:
 - 1) Select **Enable threshold**.
 - 2) For the threshold trigger value, specify **>= 80** (greater than or equal to 80 percent busy).
 - 3) For **Duration**, specify **1** interval.
 - 4) For the **i5/OS command**, specify the following:
`SNDMSG MSG('Warning,CPU...') TOUSR(*SYSOPR) MSGTYPE(*INQ)`
 - 5) For the threshold reset value, specify **< 60** (less than 60 percent busy). This will reset the monitor when CPU utilization falls below 60%.
- e. Click the **Threshold 2** tab, and enter the following values to hold all the jobs in the QBATCH job queue when CPU utilization stays above 80% for five collection intervals:
 - 1) Select **Enable threshold**.
 - 2) For the threshold trigger value, specify **>= 80** (greater than or equal to 80 percent busy).
 - 3) For **Duration**, specify **5** intervals.
 - 4) For the **i5/OS command**, specify the following:
`HLDJOBQ JOBQ(QBATCH)`
 - 5) For the threshold reset value, specify **< 60** (less than 60 percent busy). This will reset the monitor when CPU utilization falls below 60%.
 - 6) For **Duration**, specify **5** intervals.
 - 7) For the **i5/OS command**, specify the following:
`RLSJOBQ JOBQ(QBATCH)`
 This command releases the QBATCH job queue when CPU utilization stays below 60% for 5 collection intervals.
4. Click the **Actions** tab, and select **Log event** in both the **Trigger** and **Reset** columns. This action creates an entry in the event log when the thresholds are triggered and reset.
5. Click the **Systems and groups** tab to specify the systems and groups you want to monitor.
6. Click **OK** to save the monitor.
7. From the list of system monitors, right-click the new monitor and select **Start**.

Results

The new monitor displays the CPU utilization, with new data points being added every 30 seconds, according to the specified collection interval. The monitor automatically carries out the specified threshold actions, even if your PC is turned off, whenever CPU utilization reaches 80%.

Note: This monitor tracks only CPU utilization. However, you can include any number of the available metrics in the same monitor, and each metric can have its own threshold values and actions. You can also have several system monitors that run at the same time.

Scenario: Job monitor for CPU utilization

See an example job monitor that tracks the CPU utilization of a specified job and alerts the job's owner if CPU utilization gets too high

Situation

You are currently running a new application on your system, and you are concerned that some of the new interactive jobs are consuming an unacceptable amount of resources. You would like the owners of the offending jobs to be notified if their jobs ever consume too much of the CPU capacity.

You can set up a job monitor to watch for the jobs from the new application and send a message if a job consumes more than 30% of the CPU capacity.

Configuration example

To set up a job monitor, you need to define which jobs to watch for, what job attributes to watch for, and what the monitor should do when the specified job attributes are detected. To set up a job monitor that accomplishes this goal, complete the following steps:

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central** → **Monitors**, right-click **Job monitor**, and select **New Monitor...**
2. On the **General** page, enter the following values:
 - a. Specify a name and description for this monitor.
 - b. On the **Jobs to monitor** tab, enter the following values:
 - 1) For the **Job name**, specify the name of the job you want to watch for (for example, MKWIDGET).
 - 2) Click **Add**.
3. Click the **Metrics** tab, and enter the following information:
 - a. In the **Available metrics** list, expand **Summary Numeric Values**, select **CPU Percent Utilization**, and click **Add**.
 - b. On the **Threshold 1** tab for the metrics settings, enter the following values:
 - 1) Select **Enable trigger**.
 - 2) For the threshold trigger value, specify **>= 30** (greater than or equal to 30 percent busy).
 - 3) For **Duration**, specify **1** interval.
 - 4) For the **i5/OS trigger command**, specify the following:

```
SNDMSG MSG('Your job is exceeding 30% CPU capacity')  
TOUSR(&OWNER)
```
 - 5) Click **Enable reset**.
 - 6) For the threshold reset value, specify **< 20** (less than 20 percent busy).
4. Click the **Collection Interval** tab, and select **15 seconds**. This will override the Collection Services setting.
5. Click the **Actions** tab, and select **Log event** in both the **Trigger** and **Reset** columns.
6. Click the **Servers and groups** tab, and select the servers and groups you want to monitor for this job.
7. Click **OK** to save the new monitor.
8. From the list of job monitors, right-click the new monitor and select **Start**.

Results

The new monitor checks the QINTER subsystem every 15 seconds, and if the job MKWIDGET is consuming more than 30 percent of the CPU, the monitor sends a message to the job's owner. The monitor resets when the job uses less than 20% CPU capacity.

Scenario: Job monitor with Advanced Job Scheduler notification

See an example job monitor that sends an e-mail to an operator when the threshold limit of a job is exceeded.

Situation

You are currently running an application on your system, and you want to be notified if the CPU utilization reaches the specified threshold.

If the Advanced Job Scheduler is installed on the endpoint system, you can use the Send Distribution using JS (SNDDSTJS) command to notify someone by e-mail when the threshold is exceeded. For instance, you could specify that the notification escalate to the next person if the intended recipient does not respond by stopping the message. You could create on-call schedules and send the notification to only those people that are on-call. You can also send the notification to multiple e-mail addresses.

Job monitor configuration example

This example uses the SNDDSTJS command to send a message to a recipient named OPERATOR, which is a user-defined list of e-mail addresses. You can also specify an e-mail address instead of a recipient or both. To set up a job monitor that accomplishes this goal, complete the following steps:

Note: By using the code examples, you agree to the terms of the “Code license and disclaimer information” on page 84.

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central** → **Monitors**, right-click **Job monitor**, and select **New Monitor..**
2. On the **General** page, enter the following values:
 - a. Specify a name and description for this monitor.
 - b. On the **Jobs to monitor** tab, enter the following values:
 - 1) For the **Job name**, specify the name of the job you want to watch for (for example, MKWIDGET).
 - 2) Click **Add**.
3. Click the **Metrics** tab, and enter the following information:
 - a. In the **Available metrics** list, expand **Summary Numeric Values**, select **CPU Percent Utilization**, and click **Add**.
 - b. On the **Threshold 1** tab for the metrics settings, enter the following values:
 - 1) Select **Enable trigger**.
 - 2) For the threshold trigger value, specify **>= 30** (greater than or equal to 30 percent busy).
 - 3) For **Duration**, specify **1** interval.
 - 4) For the **i5/OS trigger command**, specify the following:

```
SNDDSTJS RCP(OPERATOR) SUBJECT('Job monitor trigger') MSG('Job
&JOBNAME is still running!')
```
 - 5) Click **Enable reset**.
 - 6) For the threshold reset value, specify **< 20** (less than 20 percent busy).
4. Click the **Collection Interval** tab, and select **15 seconds**. This will override the Collection Services setting.
5. Click the **Actions** tab, and select **Log event** in both the **Trigger** and **Reset** columns.
6. Click the **Servers and groups** tab, and select the servers and groups you want to monitor for this job.
7. Click **OK** to save the new monitor.
8. From the list of job monitors, right-click the new monitor and select **Start**.

Message monitor configuration example

If you use a message monitor, you can send the message text to the recipient. Here is an example of a CL program that retrieves the message text and sends an e-mail to all on-call recipients with the SNDDSTJS command.

Note: By using the code examples, you agree to the terms of the “Code license and disclaimer information” on page 84.

```
PGM PARM(&MSGKEY &TOMSGQ &TOLIB)

DCL &MSGKEY *CHAR 4
DCL &TOMSGQ *CHAR 10
DCL &TOLIB *CHAR 10

DCL &MSGTXT *CHAR 132

RCVMMSG MSGQ(&TOLIB/&TOMSGQ) MSGKEY(&MSGKEY)
        RMV(*NO) MSG(&MSGTXT)
        MONMSG CPF0000 EXEC(RETURN)

SNDDSTJS RCP(*ONCALL) SUBJECT('Message queue trigger')
MSG(&MSGTXT)
        MONMSG MSGID(CPF0000 IJS0000)

ENDPGM
```

This is the command that would call the CL program:

```
CALL SNDMAIL PARM('&MSGKEY' '&TOMSG' '&TOLIB')
```

Results

The monitor checks the QINTER subsystem every 15 seconds, and if the job MKWIDGET is consuming more than 30 percent of the CPU, the monitor sends an e-mail to the operator. The monitor resets when the job uses less than 20% CPU capacity.

See Work with notification for more information on the Advanced Job Scheduler notification function.

Scenario: Message monitor

See an example message monitor that displays any inquiry messages for your message queue that occur on any of your systems. The monitor opens and displays the message as soon as it is detected.

Situation

Your company has several systems, and it is time-consuming to check your message queue for each system. As a system administrator, you need to be aware of inquiry messages as they occur across your system.

You can set up a message monitor to display any inquiry messages for your message queue that occur on any of your systems. The monitor opens and displays the message as soon as it is detected.

Configuration example

To set up a message monitor, you need to define the types of messages you would like to watch for and what you would like the monitor to do when these messages occur. To set up a message monitor that accomplishes this goal, complete the following steps:

1. In iSeries Navigator, expand **Management Central** → **Monitors**, right-click **Message monitor**, and select **New Monitor...**
2. On the **General** page, enter a name and description for this monitor.
3. Click the **Messages** tab, and enter the following values:
 - a. For **Message queue to monitor**, specify **QSYSOPR**.
 - b. On the **Message set 1** tab, select **Inquiry** for **Type**, and click **Add**.
 - c. Select **Trigger at the following message count**, and specify **1** message.

4. Click the **Collection Interval** tab, and select **15 seconds**.
5. Click the **Actions** tab, and select **Open monitor**.
6. Click the **Systems and groups** tab, and select the systems and groups you would like to monitor for inquiry messages.
7. Click **OK** to save the new monitor.
8. From the list of message monitors, right-click the new monitor and select **Start**.

Results

The new message monitor displays any inquiry messages sent to QSYSOPR on any of the systems that are monitored.

Note: This monitor responds to only inquiry messages sent to QSYSOPR. However, you can include two different sets of messages in a single monitor, and you can have several message monitors that run at the same time. Message monitors can also carry out i5/OS commands when specified messages are received.

Using other features of Management Central

After Management Central has been set up, you can use it to streamline your server administration tasks.

Working with inventory

The iSeries Navigator inventory functions can help you collect and manage various inventories on a regular basis and to store the data on the system that you selected as your central system.

For example, you can collect the inventory for users and groups, fixes, system values, hardware resources, software resources, service attributes, contact information, or network attributes. You may have other applications installed that allow you to collect lists of other types of resources.

You can either collect an inventory immediately or schedule it to be collected at a later time. You can schedule the inventory collection to occur daily, weekly, or monthly to keep your inventory current.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Viewing an inventory

After you have collected the inventory, you can view the inventory list and right-click any item in the list to see the actions you can perform on the item.

For example, to display the inventory of all installed products on an endpoint system, select Software Inventory (**Management Central** → **Endpoint Systems** → **any endpoint system** → **Configuration and Service** → **Software Inventory** → **Installed Products**) This is a very easy way to see what software is installed on the endpoint system. The **Status** column reflects the current status of the software (Installed or Installed and supported) at the time of the last inventory collection (which is shown above the list).

It is recommended that you schedule the collection of all your system inventories on a recurring basis to keep your central system's inventory current.

How to use inventories

When you view an inventory on an endpoint system, you can right-click any item in the inventory list to see the actions you can perform on the item. Also by selecting the properties menu option for an inventory item (such as hardware) more information is displayed about that item.

For example, here are just a few of the ways that you can use inventories to manage your systems:

- After you have collected *fixes inventory*, you can compare fixes on one or more endpoint systems to the fixes on a model system. You can then send the missing fixes to the target endpoint systems and install them on those systems. You can also export the fixes inventory to a PC file, which you can use to work with the data in a spreadsheet program or other application.
- When you are viewing a *software inventory*, you can select any software product in the list, send it to one or more target endpoint systems, and install it on those systems. You can also export the software inventory to a PC file, which you can use to work with the data in a spreadsheet program or other application.
- Display a *hardware inventory* list to see the resource, status, and description of all hardware on the endpoint system. This is a very easy way to check the operational status of your hardware. The Status column reflects the operational status at the time of the last inventory collection (which is shown above the list). You can right-click any hardware listed and select **Properties**. You can review a great deal of

information under the General, Physical location, and Logical address tabs. You can use this information for upgrades as well as problem analysis. You can also export the hardware inventory to a PC file, which you can use to work with the data in a spreadsheet program or other application.

- When you display the list for a *user inventory*, you can right-click one or more users and select any of the following actions: delete, edit, view the properties, or scan for objects owned by a user. You can do similar actions with groups by selecting Group Inventory for an endpoint system.

You can search these inventories based on criteria that you specify. Additional search function is available when you search a users and groups inventory. You can export the results of the search or an entire inventory to a PC file to work with the data in a spreadsheet program or other application.

Running actions on an inventory

You might have applications installed that define actions that you can run against the collected inventory. If you have installed an application program that offers an action, you will see that action in the **Available actions** list in the Run Actions window.

To see the Run Actions window, right-click any system in the iSeries Navigator window, select **Inventory**, and then select **Run Actions**.

When you select an action from the **Available actions** list, a list of related inventories is shown under **Inventory for selected action**. You should select all the recommended inventories and then click **Add** to add this information to the **Selected actions to run** list.

For example, if you have installed the IBM Electronic Service Agent option of i5/OS, you can select **Send Electronic Service Agent inventory to IBM** from the **Available actions** list to receive your inventory data in a series of reports that show your system's growth and maintenance.

Searching a Management Central users and groups inventory

Searching on users and groups provides you with a lot of flexibility to query the user and group inventory for the information you want.

- 1 To access the **Search** window, right-click an endpoint system and select **Inventory** → **Search**.

The Basic search is for quick searches to find a particular user or group. The Advanced search page gives you the flexibility to search on additional profile properties. For example, you can search for all users on this endpoint system or system group with security officer authority by selecting Privilege class, and then selecting Security officer.

You can click **And** or **Or** to search on additional fields. For example, if you are searching for all users on this endpoint system or system group with security officer authority, you can narrow the search to users in your Accounting department with security officer authority by clicking **And** and selecting **Department** and entering the string **Accounting**.

From the Search Results window, you can perform many of the actions that you can perform on a user or group elsewhere within iSeries Navigator. For example, you can delete a user or group, edit the profile (for example, remove its Security Officer authority), view its properties, or scan for objects owned by a user or group. Also from the results window, you can export the search results into a spreadsheet, text file, or HTML (Web) page.


Advanced search is available only for user and group inventories, which require that both the central system and the endpoint systems are running OS/400 V5R1 or later.

Extreme Support

System i Extreme Support is part of the IBM Technical Support Advantage, which is IBM's comprehensive technical service and support for IBM Systems.

System i Extreme Support includes support built right into the product, iSeries Navigator, and support tools available over the Web. Some Extreme Support tools are Performance Management for System i5 over TCP/IP, Electronic Service Agent, and inventory consolidation with Management Central.

- | **Note:** Electronic Service Agent can only report problems to IBM successfully if your system is under warranty, or if you have purchased an IBM Maintenance Services Agreement.

For links to the User Guides for specific releases of Electronic Service Agent, go to the IBM Electronic Service Agent for iSeries  Web site.

| Working with systems with partitions

- | The Systems with Partitions container that is located under Management Central lets you manage the logical partitions of all of the servers on the system from the central system.

- | With logical partitioning (LPAR), you can address multiple system requirements in a single system to achieve system consolidation, business unit consolidation, and mixed production or test environments. By itself, LPAR does not provide a significant availability increase. It can, however, be used to complement other availability strategies. Since each partition is treated as a separate system, you can run a single environment on a single system image. This can provide for a more cost efficient solution.

| Authority requirements

- | Access to logical partition information in iSeries Navigator, Dedicated Service Tools (DST), and System Service Tools (SST) requires either operations or administration authority to the logical partition function. In addition, you need remote panel authorization if you want to use the Operations Console remote panel for secondary partitions from your PC.

- | Logical partitions can be created using iSeries Navigator. In order to access logical partition functions, you must first configure the service tools server. Service tools are used to configure, manage, and service your IBM iSeries model 270 or 8xx or logical partitions. If you want to manage logical partitions on servers other than model 8xx, you must use the Hardware Management Console (HMC). You will need to use a service tools user ID with LPAR administrator authority.

| Running commands with Management Central

- | iSeries Navigator enables you to define an action or a task and then perform that action or task on multiple endpoint systems or system groups. These are the same commands that you normally run using the character-based interface.

| About this task

- | For example, you can use a command definition to perform any of the following tasks:

- | • Set network attributes on multiple endpoint systems or system groups
- | • Set up your own help desk or operations "procedures book" to handle customer and system needs.

- | Any control language (CL) command that you can run in batch, you can send to multiple systems at the same time. Create the command definition, and then run the command on endpoint systems or system groups.

- | To run a command with Management Central, complete the following steps:
- | 1. Expand **Management Central** → **Endpoint System**.
- | 2. Right-click the endpoint system on which you want to run the command and click **Run Command**.
- | For more information about this window, click **Help**.

| **What to do next**

| You can click **Prompt** for assistance in entering or selecting an i5/OS command. You can choose to run the command immediately or schedule it to run at a later time.

| Starting with V5R3, the command runs under the CCSID of the user profile that is submitting the command. If the profile is set to 65535 (or is set to *sysval, and the sysval is 65535), it uses the default CCSID 37.

| **Note:** Be sure that the command you specify is supported by the release of i5/OS that is running on the target endpoint system. For example, starting with V5R3 any outputs other than job logs that are produced by a Run command are viewed by expanding the system under **My Connections** → **Basic Output** → **Printer Output**.

| **Creating command definitions**

| **About this task**

| You can create a command definition to save a command that you want to run over and over on multiple endpoint systems and system groups. Storing a command definition on the central system allows you to share commonly used or complex commands with other users. When a command is run from a definition, a task is created.

| To create a command definition, complete the following steps:

- | 1. Expand **Management Central** → **Definitions**.
- | 2. Right-click **Command** and select **New Definition**.
- | 3. The New Command Definition window opens.

Packaging and sending objects with Management Central

A bulk data transfer is the process of sending packages, fixes, PDFs and so on, from a source system to a target system in a single transfer. This topic discusses package definitions, what happens when a package is sent, and how to troubleshoot a failed transfer.

What you can do with package definitions

Sending files to another system or group of systems is a simple point-and-click operation in iSeries Navigator. If you expect to send the same files again at a later date, you can create a *package definition*, which can be saved and reused at any time to send the defined set of files and folders to multiple endpoint systems or system groups. If you create a snapshot of your files, you can keep more than one version of copies of the same set of files. Sending a snapshot ensures that no updates are made to the files during the distribution, so that the last target system receives the same objects as the first target system.

Another benefit of using iSeries Navigator to package and send objects is that you can run a command when the distribution of the package is complete. This means that you can:

- Distribute a batch input stream and run it.
- Distribute a set of programs and start your application.
- Distribute a set of data files and run a program that acts on that data.

You can specify whether to include subfolders in the package. You can also specify whether to keep or replace any file that already exists on the target system. You can start the send task immediately or click **Schedule** to specify when you want the task to start.

You can select and send files and folders without creating a package definition. However, a package definition allows you to group together a set of i5/OS objects or integrated file system files. The package definition also allows you to view this same group of files as a logical set, or as a physical set, by taking a snapshot of the files to preserve them for later distribution.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

Troubleshooting a failed transfer

- Look at the task's job log and try to determine a cause. From the Task Status window, right-click the failed endpoint and click **Task Output**.

Sending packages uses the Save/Restore function. When a save or restore operation issues an error or warning message, the Management Central package send function marks the status as failed. This does not necessarily mean that the entire process failed. You need to check the job log and determine the cause of the failure. It is possible that there is a message that indicates that the restore function worked with limitation and thus generated a warning.

- Make sure that the target system can connect back to the source system.

On the endpoint system ping itself by the long name. If this is successful, then on the source system, ping the endpoint system using its long name.

To complete a successful transfer, the target system must connect back to the source system. The IP address that is used on the target system is determined by the lookup frequency on the target system. If the lookup frequency is Never then the IP address that is used is the one that is provided by the central system for the source system.

It might be that target system cannot connect to the source system via this IP address, but can connect by using a different IP address, one that is defined in its host table. If the lookup frequency on the target is set to Always then it will use DNS, the host table, or both to determine the IP address of the source system and it will not use the IP address that is provided by the central system.

Distributing fixes to multiple systems with iSeries Navigator

After you have received your i5/OS fixes, you can use iSeries Navigator to distribute your fixes to other systems in your network.

In the past, object distribution and Systems Network Architecture distribution services (SNADS) were the choices when you wanted to send objects. If you are in a TCP/IP environment, you can use the iSeries Navigator graphical interface function of Management Central to send and distribute your fixes.

To understand how a network is set up, see the following list for a description of the different roles. A single system can assume more than one role. For example, the same system can be the central system, the source system, and a model system.

Central system

A central system directs and tracks activity in your environment. It has an active iSeries Access connection from your graphical client, and it is currently selected as the central system. Its system and inventory provide your view of the Management Central tasks and endpoints.

Endpoint systems

Endpoint systems are the systems that you are managing in your environment. The endpoint systems are controlled by the central system. The endpoint systems were discovered or created on your central system.

Source system

This is the system from which items are sent when performing a task. The source system is the source of the item that is sent. This is the system that you have selected to be the repository for the save files for the fixes that you will distribute to your other systems.

Target system

This is the system to which items are sent when performing a task. The target system is the destination of the item that is sent.

Model system

This is the system that is set up exactly the way you want it with regard to installed fixes. It has the fixes installed that you decided should be installed. You want the other systems that you are managing to have the same fixes installed as the model system. When you use the Compare and Update wizard, you make managing your fixes a lot easier.

Packaging and distribution considerations

When working with the packaging function, you need to keep these considerations in mind.

- The packaging function that does not use a snapshot, stores temporary save files in the QRPLOBJ library. These files are prefixed with QYDS. The packaging function that uses a snapshot stores temporary save files in the QUSRSYS library. (A *snapshot* is a file that contains the data at a particular instant in time for all the files that were selected to be in a package. Creating a snapshot allows you to capture the contents of the selected files at a given time and then distribute that version of the files at a future time.)

- Typically, the QRPLOBJ library is cleaned up when an IPL is done. However, if between IPLs, the temporary storage that is used in QRPLOBJ is a concern, you can use the following commands to view and clear the objects that are in this library.

```
DSPLIB LIB(QRPLOBJ)
WRKOBJPDM LIB(QRPLOBJ) OBJ(*ALL)
WRKOBJPDM LIB(QRPLOBJ) OBJ(QYDS*) OBJTYPE(*FILE) OBJATR(*SAVF)
CLRLIB LIB(QRPLOBJ)
```

- The packaging function allows you to send and restore QSYS objects, QSYS libraries, integrated file system directories, and integrated file system files.

- Database files with referential constraints might not work properly because of sequence dependency. Additionally, database files with referential constraints behave differently depending on whether the database file that is being distributed is being replaced or is a new file. Thus the packaging function does not support sending database files when there is a dependency on the sequence in which the files are restored (such as logical database files).

- The packaging function does not support IASP distributions.

- You cannot use Management Central to distribute CUM tapes/packages.

- Packaging was not designed for very large distributions. A long duration of time maybe required to send very large save files to the target systems. If the size of the files (save file or snapshot size) is over 1 gigabyte, then you should run tests in your environment to determine if the time that is required to perform the distribution to the target systems is acceptable.

As an alternative, you might want to send very large files between systems is to use FTP. This can be faster.

- You cannot distribute the latest i5/OS release, or migrate to a later release using Management Central. LPPs and Base i5/OS Options can be distributed and installed, but not Base i5/OS (QSYS and SLIC).

- You cannot mix QSYS and integrated file system files in a single package. Management Central uses the save/restore function, and is therefore bound by the restrictions that it imposes regarding mixing different file systems.

You can create a package containing QSYS files and another one containing integrated file system files, and then send each package to an endpoint system. But, you cannot combine them into a single package.

- | As a work around you can place the integrated file system objects into a save file. Then include the save file with your QSYS objects. Next, perform the restore of the save file to integrated file system objects. Or you can use the post command capability in the package definition to do the restore.
- | • You can refresh the snapshot by right-clicking on the package definition and selecting 'Update Snapshot' from the context menu. However, remember to resend the package to the systems that you want the updates on after you have updated the snapshot.
 - | • Save and restores are performed under the user profile of the user that is signed on to iSeries Navigator. The post distribution command runs under the user profile of the person who started the distribution (the person that is signed on to iSeries Navigator). The job description that is used is QSYS/QYPSJOBDD.
 - | • If you are distributing a QSYS object that you created, then you will need *RWX authority to the QRPLOBJ library on both the source and the target systems. If someone else created the object, then you might need additional authorities. Authority to RSTOBJ is required when you are sending all of the objects from a library.
- | If the package that you are distributing is an integrated file system file that you have created, then you do not need any additional authorities.
- | • In V5R2 and earlier, the package function runs under the C++ server QYPSSRV. In V5R3 and later, the package functions runs under the Java server QYPSJSVR. Thus, if your central system is V5R3 or later, you cannot create a snapshot on a V5R2 or earlier source system. In this special situation the QYPSJSVR server is not able to properly communicate with the V5R2 source QYPSSRV server. Nonetheless, you can still send a package from a V5R2 source system to a target system running V5R3 or later.

Managing users and groups with Management Central

iSeries Navigator can help you as a system administrator to keep track of the users, groups, and their level of privileges on one or more endpoint systems.

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

The following list gives you an idea of the many ways in which iSeries Navigator can make your job easier.

Create a user definition

You can create a user definition and then create multiple users across multiple systems based on the definition. First, create user definitions for the types of users on your systems. Then, when a request comes in for a new user, all special authorities, attributes, and other information common to that type of user are already stored in the user definition. You can even specify a command to be run after a user is created from a user definition! If you need assistance in entering or selecting an i5/OS command, you can click **Prompt** to select appropriate parameters and values.

When you create a new user from the user definition, you specify the name for the user, a brief description to help you identify this user in a list of users, and a new password for the user. All other properties of the new user are based on the properties stored in the user definition, unless you choose to change them. You may also select the groups the user should belong to and provide personal information about the user at the time the user is created.

Create, edit, and delete users and groups

You can create, edit, and delete users and groups across multiple endpoint systems or system groups--and even schedule these actions. For example, use the Edit Users function to change the properties for one or more users on the selected endpoint systems or system groups. If you need to change the authority level for several users on multiple systems, or if a user who has access to multiple systems changes his or her name, you can easily edit that information and apply the change to all systems.

When you use iSeries Navigator to delete users, you can select an action to be taken if any of the selected users owns objects on any system from which that user is being deleted. You can click **Scan for Owned Objects** to see what objects the selected users own on the selected endpoint systems or across the selected system groups.

Collect an inventory

You can collect an inventory of the users and groups on one or more endpoint systems, and then view, search, or export that inventory to a PC file. Extensive advanced search capabilities are provided for easy searching. For example, you can search the inventory to see who has Security Officer privileges, as well as query other profile properties. Also, you can sort these inventory lists by clicking on any column heading. For example, you can group together all users in the inventory who have Security Officer privileges by clicking the Privilege Class heading.

You can perform various actions from the User Inventory list by right-clicking one or more users and selecting an action from the menu. For example, you can delete a user, edit a user, view its properties, or scan for objects owned by a user. You can do similar actions with groups by selecting Group Inventory for an endpoint system.

It is recommended that you schedule collection of users and groups inventory on a recurring basis to keep your central system's inventory current. Changes that you make to the user or group inventory on an endpoint system or system group under Management Central are automatically updated in the current central system's inventory.

Send users and groups

You can send users and groups from one system to multiple endpoint systems or system groups. All the user properties you need are sent to the target systems, including the user name and passwords (LAN server password as well as the i5/OS password), security settings, private authorities, Enterprise Identity Mapping (EIM) associations, and mail options. If the user has an entry in the system distribution directory on the source system, an entry is created (or updated) for that user on the target system.

You can also specify the action to be taken if any user in the list that you are sending already exists on the target system. When you are sending users, you can select not to change the user that already exists, or you can select to update the existing user with the settings from the user you are sending. When you are sending users, you can click Advanced to specify advanced send options. The advanced send options include specifying the mail system for the user and synchronizing the unique identifier of the user on the target system based on the user identifier of the user being sent.

To **send** users or groups from one system to another, you must also have save/restore (*SAVSYS) authority.

Scan for owned objects

You can scan for owned objects to find out what objects a user or group owns across multiple endpoint systems or system groups, and you can even scan for objects owned by multiple users simultaneously.

Synchronize unique identifiers

You can synchronize the unique identifiers of users and groups across multiple endpoint systems to ensure that each of these numbers points to the same user on every system. This is especially important when you are working with systems in a clustering environment or a system with logical partitions. The user identification and group identification numbers are another way of identifying a user or group to a program. For example, the user identification and group identification numbers are used by programming interfaces in the integrated file systems environment.

You can choose to synchronize unique identifiers when you create new users or groups, when you edit users or groups, or when you send users or groups from one system to another. Be sure to keep your user and group inventories current if you are synchronizing unique identifiers when you create or edit users or groups.

Note: All i5/OS special authorities and other authorities that are needed when working with users and groups in the character-based interface are honored when managing users and groups with iSeries Navigator. This includes security administration (*SECADM) privileges, all object (*ALLOBJ) privileges, and authority to the profiles with which you are working. However, even a user with the most restricted set of system privileges (*USER) can view, search, or export a user or group inventory that has been collected by another user with the correct authorities. The user with *USER authority cannot create or delete users, edit existing users, or send users to another system.

Sharing with other users in Management Central

Sharing saves you time, makes system administration easier, and reduces the number of redundant tasks you need to do. As of V5R4, you can now share system monitors and system events.

Sharing allows you to use (or share) the same items: monitors, monitor events, system groups, definitions, and system administration tasks. You can even set your user preferences to share all of the new tasks that you create. For example you might give a user special authority (administered under Host Applications in Application Administration) to view all tasks, definitions, job monitors, message monitors, file monitors, activity monitors, system monitors, system events, and system groups under Management Central in the iSeries Navigator window.

Only the owner of an item can change the level of sharing. The owner can specify any of the following levels of sharing:

None	Other users cannot view this item. Only the owner of the item or a user with special authority administered under Host Applications in Application Administration can view this item. Users with this special authority, called Management Central Administration Access, can view all tasks, definitions, job monitors, message monitors, system monitors, system events, and system groups under Management Central in the iSeries Navigator window.
Read-Only	Other users can view this item and use it. Other users can create a new item based on this one and make changes to the new one as needed. However, other users cannot delete or change this item in any way. If you are the owner of a monitor and have specified actions (such as opening the event log window or sounding an alarm on the PC), these actions occur for all users of the monitor whenever a threshold is triggered or reset. The other users cannot change these actions. If the item (a task or a monitor) is running, other users cannot stop it.
Controlled	Other users can start and stop this task or monitor. Only the owner can delete the item or change any properties of this item, including the level of sharing. Other users can also view this item and use it to create a new item based on this one. If you are the owner of a monitor and have specified actions (such as opening the event log window or sounding an alarm on the PC), these actions occur for all users of the monitor whenever a threshold is triggered or reset. The other users cannot change these actions. Any actions that are associated with running a monitor that was created by another user (the owner) runs under the authority of the owner. Therefore, as the owner, you might be sharing a monitor with someone who does not have the same level of authority as you.
Full	Other users can change and delete this definition or system group. Other users can also view this item and use it to create a new definition or system group.

Uses for sharing objects and tasks

What you can do with sharing depends on the needs of your work environment. Consider these examples:

- **You can share job monitors, message monitors, system monitors, and file monitors.**

When you share monitors, others can use the monitors that you set up to measure the monitored activity on the systems in your network. If you choose **Read-Only** sharing, others can open the monitor and its event log, and they can view the properties of the monitor. If you choose **Controlled** sharing, others can also start or stop the monitor. The level of sharing that you specify when you create a monitor also applies to any events that are logged when a threshold is triggered or reset. You can change the level of sharing for events after they have been logged.

- **You can share system groups.**

When you share system groups, other users can view the system groups and use them to perform authorized actions. Unless you specify **Full** sharing, you control the endpoint systems in the system group for all authorized users. This ensures that the system group is always up to date. Suppose you created a system group called "West Coast Systems." If you chose to share that group, all system operators can use that system group to work with the West Coast systems. If you specify **Full** sharing, other users may update the contents of that group.

- **You can share definitions.**

Part of your job might include maintaining a "run book" of commonly used commands. You can share the command definitions in that run book to ensure that the commands your system operators run are accurate. If you need to make a change to one of those commands, you only need to do it once. Your users can share that one set of accurate commands.

You can also share package definitions, product definitions, and user definitions. By sharing definitions, you save other users the time it takes to create their own definitions.

- **You can share tasks.**

Tasks are long-running actions in iSeries Navigator. You can share any actions that have been created and allow users to see the status of tasks. For example, suppose you needed to install 50 fixes on a system group containing 50 systems. If you shared that task, you can start the task and then go home while letting the second shift operators see the status on their PC.

- **You can use global sharing to share all tasks.**

Use global sharing to specify the level of sharing for all your system administration tasks -- None, Read-Only, or Controlled sharing. You access global sharing through the User Preferences window by right-clicking on Management Central. When you specify a value other than None, the sharing value applies to all future tasks that are created with iSeries Navigator on this PC. Existing tasks are not affected. For example, suppose you are in an environment where you are part of a five-person team that works around the clock. If you chose to globally share your tasks at the Controlled level, your team can see what you did and work with the tasks you started -- even when you are not there.

Synchronizing date and time values

Management Central provides a convenient way for you to synchronize date and time values across your network.

To synchronize the date and time values across your network, select your endpoint systems or system groups whose date and time values you want to update from the **Endpoint Systems** list under Management Central in iSeries Navigator. Then, right-click any selected system and select **System Values** → **Synchronize Date and Time**. Specify a model system that has the most accurate date and time values.

The date and time system values that are updated on the target systems include system date (QDAYOFWEEK, QDATE, QDAY, QMONTH, QYEAR), time of day (QTIME, QHOUR, QMINUTE, QSECOND), and time zone (QTIMZON). To verify that a time adjustment is being made, select the endpoint system from the list under My Connections (or your active environment) in iSeries Navigator. Then, go to **Configuration and Service** → **Time Management** → **Time Adjustment** to view the current time adjustment.

The time used from the model system is the software clock time rather than the QTIME system value. The software clock time is the same as the QTIME system value except when the SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol) client is started on the model system. When SNTP is running on the model system, the software clock is synchronized to the time server specified in the SNTP configuration. For more information about configuring SNTP, see Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP).

You can choose to synchronize the time without changing the time zone, or synchronize both the time and the time zone with those on the model system.

When a system changes to or from Daylight Saving Time (DST), the GMT offset (QUTCOffset) system value is automatically updated from the GMT offset attribute of the time zone (QTIMZON) system value.

Synchronizing functions

You can synchronize the configuration of key functions, such as EIM and Kerberos, across a group of endpoint systems.

You select a model endpoint system and a set of target endpoint systems, and then use the Synchronize Functions wizard to duplicate the model system's Kerberos or EIM configurations (or both) on the specified target systems. Synchronizing these functions from the model system saves you time by eliminating the task of individually configuring each function on each target system. Synchronizing your EIM configurations allows you to create EIM associations between user identities within your network. This in turn allows a user who has different profiles on different systems to work with distributed applications that use Kerberos authentication without having to sign on to each of these systems individually.

For example, John Smith may be JSMITH on system CHICAGO1, JOHNSMITH on system DETROIT1, and JRSMITH on system DENVER. If EIM and Kerberos are configured on all three systems, and all three profiles are associated with the same EIM identifier, John Smith can use Management Central to manage these V5R3 systems. For example, he can run commands on these systems, and monitor performance, jobs, and other resources on these systems. John Smith can also access other services and applications that use EIM and Kerberos authentication without the need for multiple passwords to these different systems across the enterprise.

Using Kerberos and EIM together in this way is referred to as *single signon* because it eliminates the need to provide multiple user names and passwords for distributed applications. Single signon benefits users, administrators, and application developers by enabling an easier password management system across multiple platforms without the need to change underlying security policies. See Single signon for details on how to enable single signon by using network authentication service and Enterprise Identity Mapping (EIM).

Note: If the SNTP box is checked then a TCP job QTOTNTP should be running on the endpoint. If it is not running then Management Central will use information from the model system. If SNTP is checked and the client QTOTNTP job is running then you should not run multiple Time Synchronization tasks within one polling interval of the SNTP client. You can view the SNTP polling interval at **My Connections** → **system** → **TCP/IP** → **Right-click SNTP** → **Properties** → **Client tab** .

Scheduling tasks or jobs with Management Central scheduler

iSeries Navigator provides two different tools you can use to schedule tasks or jobs: an integrated scheduler (the Management Central scheduler) and the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Management Central scheduler

The Management Central scheduler helps you to organize when you want your tasks to occur. You have the option of choosing to perform a task immediately or choosing a later time.

You can use the Management Central scheduler to schedule a variety of tasks. For example, you can automate the process of collecting an inventory (such as hardware, software, or fixes) on whichever day fits your operating schedule. You might schedule such a collection to occur every Saturday night at 10 p.m. You can also schedule to clean up the save files and cover letters of the fixes from your systems on the first of every month. Or you might want to install a set of fixes once.

To schedule a later time to perform a task, click **Schedule** from any window in which the button is displayed. Your scheduling information is stored on the central system and submitted from there. No scheduling function is needed at the endpoint system. You can then view the scheduled job in one of the Scheduled Tasks containers. You can also view the job by using Work with job schedule entries (WRKJOBSCDE) command on the character-based interface. Scheduled jobs have a job name of Qxxxxxxx where xxxxxxxx will be a hex number such as FFFFFFF08.

Important: Do not use the Work with Job Schedule Entries (WRKJOBSCDE) command to alter or delete a scheduled job if that job was scheduled using the Management Central Scheduler or the Advanced Job Scheduler. If the job is altered or deleted by using WRKJOBSCDE, Management Central is not notified of the changes. The task might not run as expected, and error messages can appear in the Management Central server job logs.

The following scheduling options are available from the Management Central scheduler:

- **Daily**
The task runs every day at the specified time beginning on the specified date.
- **Weekly**
The task runs every week at the specified time beginning on the specified date. You may either accept the default (today's date) or specify the day of the week when you want the task to run.
- **Monthly**
The task runs every month at the specified time beginning on the specified date. You may either accept the default (today's date) or specify a day of the month (1-31), First day, or Last day.

You can schedule any task for which a **Schedule** button is available. For example, you can schedule a specific time to collect inventory. Tasks that run only once will be removed from the Scheduled Tasks view when they are run. They then appear in a Task Activity folder. (If you want full calendar management, you should use the Advanced Job Scheduler.)

For more information about these and other Management Central tasks and topics, refer to the detailed task help that is available from the iSeries Navigator window. Click **Help** from the menu bar and select **iSeries Navigator overview** → **Management Central**.

What you can do with Management Central scheduler

Using the scheduler function gives you the flexibility to do your work when it is convenient for you. In addition, you can use the Management Central scheduler to do almost any task in Management Central. For example, you can schedule when to do any of the following tasks:

- Run commands on selected endpoint systems and system groups
- Collect inventory on selected endpoint systems and system groups
- Collect system values inventory on selected endpoint systems and system groups; then compare and update system values to those on a model system
- Create, delete, edit, and send users and groups across multiple endpoint systems
- Send fixes or packages of files and folders to selected endpoint systems and system groups
- Start installing fixes, uninstall fixes, or install fixes permanently
- Delete the save files and cover letters for selected fixes on selected endpoint systems and system groups
- Start and stop Collection Services on selected endpoint systems and system groups

You can schedule a task to run once, in which case the task runs a single time beginning at the specified date and time. Tasks that run only once are removed from the Scheduled Tasks container when they run. They then appear in a Task Activity container.

Advanced Job Scheduler

The Advanced Job Scheduler is a separate licensed program (5722-JS1) that you can install and use to schedule tasks and jobs. This scheduling tool provides more calendar features and offers greater control over scheduled events. If you have Advanced Job Scheduler installed, click the **Schedule** button from any iSeries Navigator window to schedule tasks and jobs.

- | After you have installed the plug-in, an Advanced Job Scheduler container displays under Management Central. Tasks that are scheduled with the Advanced Job Scheduler are in this container.
- | You can also use the Work with Jobs using Job Scheduler (WRKJOBJS) command to display jobs scheduled with the Advanced Job Scheduler. However, do not delete scheduled Management Central tasks or change the owner from the WRKJOBJS display. If the job is altered or deleted by using WRKJOBJS, Management Central is not notified of the changes. The task might not run as expected, and error messages can appear in the Management Central server job logs.

To find more information about installing and using this tool, see the [Advanced Job Scheduler](#) topic.

Advanced Job Scheduler

The Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program (5722-JS1) is a powerful scheduler that allows unattended job processing 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. This scheduling tool provides more calendar features and offers greater control over scheduled events than the Management Central scheduler. You can also view job completion history and manage notification of a job's status.

- | If you want to schedule jobs on several systems in your network, the product must be installed on each of your systems. If you want to use the Advanced Job Scheduler in iSeries Navigator (and in Management Central), then you must install the client plugin from a system that has the Advanced Job Scheduler installed.

However, it is not necessary to install the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program on each endpoint system in your Management Central network. When you install the Advanced Job Scheduler on the central system, jobs or tasks that you define on an endpoint system will gather job information that is needed from the central system. You must set up all job definition information on the central system.

If systems in your network have the Advanced Job Scheduler installed locally, you can schedule tasks outside of the Management Central network. Under **My Connections** in iSeries Navigator, you have access to the Advanced Job Scheduler on that local system when you expand **Work Management**.

- | **Note:** For ordering information, see the Job Scheduler for i5/OS  web site.

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless is a software application that allows you to access Advanced Job Scheduler on multiple Internet-accessible devices, such as an Internet-ready telephone, PDA Web browser or PC Web browser.

The wireless feature of Advanced Job Scheduler resides on your system, where Advanced Job Scheduler is installed, and allows you to access your jobs and activity, as well as send messages to recipients on your system, and stop and start the Advanced Job Scheduler monitor. Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless allows each user to customize the settings and preferences of their browsing experience. For instance, a user can show activity, display jobs, and customize the jobs they display.

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless allows you to access your jobs when you are normally unable to access a System i terminal or emulator. Connect to the Internet with your mobile device and enter the URL for the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless servlet. This launches a menu that gives you real-time access to Advanced Job Scheduler.

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless works on two types of devices. A Wireless Markup Language (WML) device is an Internet-ready cellular phone. A Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) is a PDA or PC Web browser. Throughout this topic, the different devices are referred to as WML and HTML.

Scheduling jobs with Advanced Job Scheduler

Follow these instructions to manage the Advanced Job Scheduler. You first need to install the licensed program, and then complete the tasks to customize the Advanced Job Scheduler. Finally, the remainder of the tasks allow you to work with and manage this scheduler.

What's new in Advanced Job Scheduler for V5R4

Several enhancements have been made to the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Add multiple commands to a scheduled task

- A command list is a stored set of instructions that Advanced Job Scheduler uses to process Management Central jobs. You can now add a series of commands to the scheduled Management Central task and control the run sequence of these commands. In the past you could only schedule one Management Central task (you could schedule one job to collect inventory, then another job to install fixes, and another one to run commands). Now you can create one Advanced Job Scheduler job that does all those activities.

When scheduling a task, you have the option to create a new scheduled job, create a new scheduled job based on an existing scheduled job, or add the task to an existing job. CL commands can also be added to Management Central scheduled tasks. For instance, to delay the job between tasks you can use the Delay Job (DLYJOB) command.

Tasks are processed on the endpoint system that was selected when the task was created. However, all CL commands are processed on the Central system. Each task must complete before the next task or CL command in the list will process.

After you click the **Schedule** button for a Management Central task, the next window prompts you to specify whether you want to create a new job, create a new job based on another job, or add to an existing job.

The **Command** field is located on the **Scheduled Job Properties - General** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Scheduled Jobs** → **Right-click a job** → **Properties**)

Notification Banner control

- When you distribute spooled files by using Report Distribution, you can now choose from a list of items and have them print in a large font on the banner page of the new spooled file. The default items are Job name and Spooled file name. You can select up to 2 banner items to print large.

The **Available banner items** field is located on the **Notification Properties** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Right-click Notification** → **Properties**)

Add send e-mail menu option on system

- This new menu option allows you to use the Advanced Job Scheduler to send an e-mail. When you select this menu item, the New E-Mail Message window appears. This is the same window that appears when you click **My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notifications** → **Right-click E-mail** → **New E-mail**.

My Connections → **Right-click a server** → **Send e-mail via AJS**

Distribute reports via the Basic Operations container

- The **Distribute Reports** window provides you with a place to manually distribute spooled files that are generated by a user job that is using a report distribution list. The job can be a job started by Advanced Job Scheduler or manually by a user. You will be prompted for a Report Distribution List. The Report Distribution List is a list of spooled files and the recipients to whom the spooled files will be delivered.

My Connections → **server** → **Basic Operations** → **Jobs** → **Right-click a job** → **Distribute Reports**

Availability schedule for e-mail recipients

- The availability schedule is the schedule for which the recipient is available to receive notification messages. You can select Always available, blank (never available) or a schedule option that was previously defined in the **Advanced Job Scheduler - Schedules** properties window.

The **Availability schedule** field is located on the **Recipient Properties - Email** window. (My Connections → server → Work Management → Advanced Job Scheduler → Notifications → Recipients → Right-click a recipient name → Properties)

Work Flow Manager

- The Work Flow Manager is a new tool that lets you define units of work that can consist of a combination of automated and manual steps. The units of work can then be scheduled or started manually. With various notification check points, users can be notified when steps have started, completed, did not run by a specific time, and exceeded the run limit. Each step may have predecessor and successor jobs. Predecessor jobs for a step must complete before the step can be automatically or manually completed. After a step has completed, successor jobs are set to run. It is common to specify predecessor jobs that are the same as the successor jobs of the previous step. This causes the step to wait until the jobs complete before notifying of the step's completion.

A good candidate for using the Advanced Job Scheduler Work Flow Manager is payroll processing. The payroll process consists of manual steps such as inputting time cards, validating reports, and printing and disbursing checks. The automatic steps can clear the batch work files, process time card input, run the payroll updates, and create the reports and checks.

My Connections → server → Work Management → Advanced Job Scheduler → Work Flow Manager

Integrated file system Object Resource Dependency

- The **Resource Dependencies** window displays information about a specific job's resource dependencies, including a list of dependencies, the requirements needed before continuing to run a job, and the time to wait before resetting a job, as well as allows you to add, remove, or view the properties of a particular resource dependency. New to V5R4 you can indicate if this dependency object is an integrated file system and specify the path.

My Connections → server → Work Management → Advanced Job Scheduler → Scheduled Jobs → Right Click a job → Resource Dependencies → Create a new dependency type object

Page Selection for notification spool file attachments

- Page Selection allows you to specify selection information based on text and its location within each page of a spooled file. You can specify that the text must exist at a specific location on each page or anywhere on the page. You can also subset the spooled file by selecting a page range.

The Page Selection function can be found at **My Connections → server → Work Management → Advanced Job Scheduler → Notification → Report Distribution List → Right-click a list → Properties → Click a spooled file → Click Properties**

Add option to not reset held jobs

- Currently there is a possible performance impact when jobs that are scheduled to run periodically are held. Each time the scheduled date and time is reached for a held job, the Advanced Job Scheduler server job determines if the job is still held, and if so, calculates the next date and time the held job should run. New for V5R4, you can suppress this calculation by making sure that the **Reset held jobs** field is unchecked. When the **Reset held jobs** field is unchecked, the next time the date and time is reached for a held job, the scheduled date and time fields are cleared, and no further processing activity is triggered on the held job. When you release the job, the server then calculates the next date and time the job should run. Using the **Reset held jobs** field applies to all jobs defined using the Advanced Job Scheduler.

The **Reset held jobs** field is located on the **Advanced Job Scheduler Properties - General** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Right-click Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Properties**)

Installing the Advanced Job Scheduler

The first time that you connected to your Management Central server, iSeries Navigator asked you if you wanted to install the Advanced Job Scheduler. If you chose no and want to install it now, you can do so by using the Install Plug-Ins feature of iSeries Navigator.

1. From your **iSeries Navigator** window, click **File** from the menu bar.
2. Click **Install Options** → **Install Plug-Ins**.
3. Click the source system where the Advanced Job Scheduler is installed and click **OK**. Check with the system administrator if you are not sure what source system to use.
4. Enter your i5/OS **User ID** and **Password**, and click **OK**.
5. Click **Advanced Job Scheduler** from the Plug-in selection list.
6. Click **Next** and then click **Next** again.
7. Click **Finish** to complete and exit the setup.

Results

You have now installed the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Locate the scheduler

About this task

To locate the scheduler, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Management Central**.
2. Click **Scan Now** in response to the message that iSeries Navigator has detected a new component. You might see this message again when you access systems from the **My Connections** container.
3. Expand **My Connections** → of the system that has the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program installed → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler**.

Results

After you have finished this preliminary work with the Advanced Job Scheduler, you are ready to set up the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Setting up the Advanced Job Scheduler

After you have installed the Advanced Job Scheduler, you need to configure it. After you have finished this preliminary work, you are ready to begin scheduling jobs.

Assigning the general properties

You can follow these instructions to assign the general properties used by Advanced Job Scheduler. You can specify how long to retain activity and log entries for the Advanced Job Scheduler, as well as the period that jobs will not be allowed to run.

About this task

You can specify the working days that jobs will process, and whether an application is required for each scheduled job. If you have a notification product installed, you can also set up the command that will be used to send a notification when a job completes or fails or you can use the Send Distribution using Job Scheduler (SNDDSTJS) command to notify a recipient

You can specify how long to retain activity records for jobs, as well as the period that jobs will not be allowed to run. You can specify the working days that jobs are allowed to process, and whether an application is required for each submitted job.

You can have a notification product installed which allows you to receive a notification (message) when a job ends. You can define the notification command that will send a notification when a job completes or fails or you can use the Send Distribution using Job Scheduler (SNDDSTJS) command to notify a recipient.

To set up the general properties for the Advanced Job Scheduler, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Specify the **Activity Retention**. The activity retention is how long you want to retain the activity records for jobs. The possible values are 1 to 999 days or occurrences. Click **Days** to specify if you want to keep activity for a certain number of days, or click **Occurrences per job** if you want to keep activity for a certain number of occurrences per job.
4. Specify the **Log retention**. The log retention specifies, in days, how long you want to retain Advanced Job Scheduler log entries.
5. You can specify a **Reserved period**. Jobs will not run during this time.
6. Specify the working days from the list. If a day is selected, it is designated as a working day and can be referenced when scheduling jobs.
7. Click **Application required for scheduled job** to designate whether an application is required for each scheduled job. **Applications** are jobs that have been grouped together for processing. This cannot be selected if existing jobs do not contain an application. If you choose to have an application required for certain jobs, go to working with applications.
8. Click **Calendars** to set up the scheduling, holiday, and fiscal calendars to use, set up holiday calendar, and set up fiscal calendar.
9. Click **Base periodic frequency on start time** to base the next run time on the start time for jobs that are scheduled to run periodically. For instance, a job is to run every 30 minutes, starting at 8:00 am. (For a job to run around the clock, specify 7:59 am as the ending time.) The job runs for a total of 20 minutes. With this field checked, the job runs at 8:00 am, 8:30 am, 9:00 am, and so on. If this field is not checked, the job runs at 8:00 am, 8:50 am, 9:40 am, 10:30 am, and so on.
10. Click **Reset held jobs** to continue to recalculate and display the next date and time a held job runs.
11. Specify a **Start time of day**. This is the time of day that you consider starts a new day. All jobs that are specified to use this time of day will have their job date changed to the previous day if the time the job starts is before the **Start time of day** field.
12. Specify a **Job monitor user**. This field specifies the name of the user profile to use as the owner of the monitor job. All jobs that have **Current user** specified use the user profile of the monitor job. The monitor job's default user profile is QIJS.
13. In the **Notification command** field, you can specify a command. Use the Send Distribution using Job Scheduler Notification (SNDDSTJS) command supplied with the system or a command specified by your notification software. The SNDDSTJS command uses the Advanced Job Scheduler notification function. The designated recipients can receive messages for normal and abnormal completions of job scheduled entries.

Specifying permission levels

This information explains how to specify permission levels for jobs, functions of the product, and provide new job default permissions.

About this task

You can specify permission levels for jobs, functions of the product, and provide new job default permissions to be associated with each Job Control/Application. The permissions for a job allow you to

grant or deny access to the following actions: submit, manage, permission, display, copy, update, or delete. You can also grant or deny access to individual functions of the product such as Work with Schedule Calendars, Send Reports, and Add Job.

Default permission levels are transferred to new jobs when they are added. In which case, the system will transfer the New Job permissions based on the application specified within the job definition. If no application is used, it will transfer the *SYSTEM New Job permissions.

Specifying permission levels for functions of the product:

About this task

To specify permission levels for functions of the product, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click **Permissions**.
4. Select a function and click **Properties**.
5. On the Function Permissions Properties window, edit the permission level as necessary. You can grant or deny access to the public or specific users.

Specifying permission levels to jobs:

About this task

To specify permission levels to jobs, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
3. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Permissions**.
4. On the Permissions Properties window, edit the permission level as necessary. You can grant or deny access to the public or specific users. In addition, you can specify submit, manage, permission, display, copy, update, or delete permissions.

Specifying default permission levels:

About this task

To specify default permission levels for new jobs associated with a Job Control/Application, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click **Job Controls/Applications**.
4. Select a job control or application from the list and click **New Job Permissions**.
5. On the Function Permissions Properties window, edit the permission level as necessary. You can grant or deny access to the public or specific users. In addition, you can specify submit, manage, permission, display, copy, update, or delete permissions.

Setting up a scheduling calendar

These instructions show how to set up a calendar of selected days for scheduling a job or job group. This calendar can specify the dates to be used for scheduling a job, or it can be used in conjunction with other schedules.

About this task

A **scheduling calendar** is a calendar of selected days that you can use for scheduling a job or job group. You can display scheduling calendars, add a new scheduling calendar, add a new scheduling calendar based on an existing one, or remove an existing calendar, provided it is not in use by a currently scheduled job.

You can select a calendar and display its properties to make changes. When you select a calendar, the details of the calendar are displayed under Details.

To set up a scheduling calendar, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the General page, click **Calendars**.
4. On the Scheduling Calendars page, click **New**.
5. Specify a **Name**.
6. In the **Description** field, specify text that describes the calendar.
7. Choose a **Reference calendar** if applicable. This is a calendar that was previously set up, and its properties will be applied to the new calendar as if you merged the two calendars. You will not have reference calendars if this is your first time using the Advanced Job Scheduler.
8. Select the dates that you want to include on your calendar. You must specify whether each date you have selected is for the current year or for every year in the **Selected date** field, before you can add another date to the calendar. Otherwise, any date you select will be deselected when you click a different date.
9. Specify if you want certain days of the week to be included on the calendar.

Setting up a holiday calendar

These instructions show how to set up a calendar for days that you do not want to allow processing for a scheduled job. Alternate days can be specified for each exception day, or processing can be skipped completely for that day.

About this task

A **holiday calendar** is an exception calendar for days that you do not want to process an Advanced Job Scheduler job. Alternate days can be specified for each exception day that you specify in a holiday calendar. You can display holiday calendars, add a new holiday calendar, add a new holiday calendar based on an existing one, or remove an existing calendar, provided it is not in use by a currently scheduled job.

Predefined schedules can be used in holiday calendars. You can create a schedule THIRDFRI that has a frequency of the third Friday of each month. When you use THIRDFRI in a holiday calendar, you cause all jobs that use this holiday calendar to not run on the third Friday of each month. One or more schedules can be used in a holiday calendar. Dates that are generated by the schedule will be shown on the calendar with a black border.

You can select a calendar and display its properties to make changes. When you select a calendar, the details of the calendar are displayed under Details.

Setting up a holiday calendar:

About this task

To set up a holiday calendar, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.

2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and select **Properties**.
3. On the General page, click **Calendars**.
4. Click the **Holiday Calendars** tab.
5. Click **New** and type a name for the calendar.
6. In the **Description** field, specify text to describe the calendar.
7. Choose a **Reference calendar** if applicable. This is a calendar that was previously set up, and its properties will be applied to the new calendar as if you merged the two calendars. You will not have reference calendars if this is your first time using the Advanced Job Scheduler.
8. Select the dates that you want to include on your calendar. You must specify whether each date you have selected is for the current year or for every year in the **Selected date** field, before you can add another date to the calendar. Otherwise, any date you select will be deselected when you click a different date.
9. Select an alternate day for the job to run. You can choose the previous working day, next working day, a specific date or not at all. To select a specific date, click **Specific alternate date**, and type the date.
10. Select specific days of the week to be included on the calendar.

Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar:

About this task

To add a holiday calendar to a scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the General page, click **Calendars**.
4. On the Holiday calendar page, select the holiday calendar and click **Properties**.
5. From the lower left hand corner of the tab, click **Schedules**.
6. Select the appropriate schedule and click **Add**.
7. To change the **Alternate day**, right-click the schedule from the **Selected Schedules** list and click the correct **Alternate Day**.

Setting up a fiscal calendar

If you want to divide the fiscal year into periods other than months, follow these steps to set up a fiscal calendar of selected days for scheduling a job or job group.

About this task

A *fiscal calendar* is a calendar of selected days that you can use for scheduling a job or job group. Use a fiscal calendar to define a fiscal calendar that is unique to your business. You can specify the start and end dates for each period in the fiscal year.

To set up a fiscal calendar, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the General window, click **Calendars**.
4. On the Fiscal Calendars page, click **New**.
5. Specify a **Name**.
6. In the **Description** field, type in text to describe the calendar.
7. Click **New** on the Fiscal Calendar Properties window to create a new entry.
8. Select a period and specify the start and end dates. You can specify up to 13 periods.
9. Click **OK** to save the fiscal calendar entry.

10. Repeat steps 7 through 9 as necessary.

Specifying a mail server to use for notification

A mail server is required if you want to send e-mail notification messages.

About this task

To set up the notification properties, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Notification** and click **Properties**.
4. Specify how many days to store messages. Specify a number in the **Message retention** field.
5. Specify an **Outgoing mail server (SMTP)**. For example, SMTP.yourserver.com.
6. Specify a **Port**. The default port number is 25.
7. Specify an e-mail address in the **Reply address** field. All reply messages are sent to this address.
8. Select **Yes** or **No** in the **Log send activity** field. Send activity is used for problem determination.
9. Specify the **Number of banner pages** allowed. This is used in Report Distribution.
10. Click **OK** to save the notification properties.

Setting up multiple scheduling environments

You can set up scheduling environments on the same system. By doing this, the original data library can act as the active data library and the copied data library can be used for testing. Thus you have two scheduling environments, one for testing and one that is the actual. In addition, the test data library can serve as a backup if there is a system failure on the original system. This feature gives you added protection if you create an error in the original data library because you have a backup copy of the data library.

About this task

There are several reasons why you might want to set up multiple scheduling environments. You might want to have a production version and a test version of the product running at the same time. This type of environment allows you to test various job schedules before actually using them in the data library on the production system. Or you might have a system that is the backup for one or more other systems in which you can use a data-mirroring product to replicate the Advanced Job Scheduler data library (QUSRIJS) from the source system into a library named differently. In this case, the data library is active until there is a problem with the source system.

A scheduling environment is a duplicate of the QUSRIJS library except with different data. For instance you can have another data library named QUSRIJSTST with all the objects as QUSRIJS. Each are considered data libraries.

To set up a multiple scheduling environment, follow these steps:

1. Obtain a data library from a system

To create a data library, you need to obtain a data library from a system. The following are three ways that you can obtain a data library from the system:

- Save the data library from a system and restore it onto the production system.
- Duplicate the data library on the current system using the Copy Library (CPYLIB) command.
- Mirror a data library on the test system. These systems should be running the same version release level.

Note: The copied, restored, or mirrored data library uses a different name than the original system.

2. Assign data libraries to users

After you obtain a test data library, add the data library to the Advanced Job Scheduler's properties and assign users to the data library. Therefore, when a user uses the Advanced Job Scheduler, the changes that the user makes are stored in the data library assigned to the user.

3. Copy jobs from test data library to actual data library (optional)

If you are using a data library for testing purposes, you might want to copy the jobs from the test data library to the actual data library in use. You only need to do this if you restored or copied a data library in step 1 and you have jobs that you want to move to the actual data library in use. You do not need to do this if you mirrored a data library from the actual system to a test system.

To copy jobs from one system's data library to another, use the Copy Job using Job Scheduler (CPYJOBJS) command. For more information about the specific parameters for this command, see the online help.

Assigning data libraries to users

The data library stores any changes that the user does using the Advanced Job Scheduler. A data library contains all the objects found in the QUSRIJS library. You can have an unlimited number of data libraries.

About this task

To assign data libraries to users, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the Data Libraries window, click **Add** to specify a data library. The data libraries that are listed are available to all users on the system.
4. On the Users window, click **Add** to add new users.
5. Specify a name.
6. Select a data library.
7. Click **OK** to add the user.
8. Click **Properties** to change the data library assigned to a user.

Results

With data libraries, you can set up multiple scheduling environments.

Managing the Advanced Job Scheduler

This information shows how to schedule jobs using the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Creating and scheduling a job

You can schedule a job and specify the commands that are associated with the job. You can also specify starting and ending commands to run a special version of a scheduled job.

About this task

To create and schedule a new scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Scheduled Jobs** and click **New Scheduled Job**.

Creating and scheduling a job group

You can set up and schedule a series of jobs that run consecutively in a specified order. Jobs within a job group require completion before the next job is submitted for processing.

About this task

Job groups are jobs that are grouped together to run consecutively in the order specified. A normal completion is required for each job in the group before the next job in the group is submitted for processing. If any job in the group does not complete normally, the processing stops for that group.

To create and schedule a new job group, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Job Groups** and click **New Job Group**.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the new job group.

Predefined schedules

You can create schedules that contain information needed to schedule a job or calculate exception dates within a holiday calendar.

About this task

For instance, you can create an ENDOFWEEK schedule that contains the day of the week to run, along with any additional calendars. The ENDOFWEEK schedule can then be used by all the jobs that match that scheduling frequency. You can access this feature only through iSeries Navigator.

You can use those same predefined schedules that are used in a job with your holiday calendars. You can create a schedule THIRDFRI that has a frequency of the third Friday of each month. When you use THIRDFRI in a holiday calendar, you cause all jobs that use this holiday calendar to not run on the third Friday of each month. You can use one or more schedules in a holiday calendar. Dates that are generated by the schedule will be shown on the calendar with a black border.

Setting up a predefined schedule:

To set up a predefined schedule, follow these steps.

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the Schedules tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the schedule.
5. Type a description for the schedule.
6. Select the frequency and dates that you want to include in your schedule, as well as any additional calendars.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the new schedule.

Adding a schedule to a scheduled job:

To add a schedule to a scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
4. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Properties**.

5. Click the Schedule tab.
6. From the upper right hand corner of the tab, select the appropriate Schedule option.

Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar:

A holiday calendar is an exception calendar for days that you do not want to process an Advanced Job Scheduler job. Alternate days can be specified for each exception day that you specify in a holiday calendar.

About this task

To add a schedule to a holiday calendar, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the **General** page, click **Holiday Calendars**.
4. On the Holiday Calendars page, select the holiday calendar and click **Properties**.
5. From the lower left hand corner of the tab, click **Schedules**.
6. Select the appropriate schedule and click **Add**.
7. To change the **Alternate day**, right-click the schedule from the **Selected Schedules** list and click the correct **Alternate Day**.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information.

Creating a temporary scheduled job

At times it might be necessary to run a scheduled job now or in the future in addition to its normal schedule. Use the Submit Job using Job Scheduler (SBMJOBJS) command, option 7 from Work with Jobs display, or the **Run** option from iSeries Navigator. It might also be necessary to process only a portion of the commands in the command list when setting up this special run.

About this task

The SBJMJOBJS command allows you to specify the Starting and Ending command sequences. For instance, JOBA has 5 commands, sequences 10 through 50. You can specify on the SBJMJOBJS command to start with sequence 20 and end with sequence 40. This bypasses sequence 10 and 50.

iSeries Navigator allows you to select a starting command within the command list and an ending command.

To run a special version of a scheduled job with iSeries Navigator, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
4. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Run**.
5. Specify whether to run the job now or in the future.
6. Select the starting and ending commands.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the new job.

Scheduling job dependencies

The Advanced Job Scheduler allows you to set up dependencies that reflect how jobs are processed in your environment. Dependencies determine when a job or group of jobs can run. You can select to have all dependencies met before a job can run, or you can have at least one dependency met before the job can run.

About this task

Dependencies include the following:

- **Job dependencies**

Job dependencies refer to predecessor and successor relationships for jobs. Predecessor jobs are those that must run before the successor job will run. A successor job is a job that runs after all the predecessor jobs have been processed. There can be multiple successor jobs for a single predecessor job as well as multiple predecessor jobs for a single successor job. In addition, you can specify that a dependent job be skipped if its predecessors and successors run on a day that the dependent job is not scheduled to run.

- **Active dependencies**

Active dependencies are lists of jobs that cannot be active when the selected job is to be submitted. If any of the jobs are active, the Advanced Job Scheduler will not let the specified job run. The selected job will be delayed until all the jobs in the list are inactive.

- **Resource dependencies**

Resource dependencies are based on several things. Each type that follows describes the areas that are checked. Following are the types of resource dependencies:

File The job is dependent on the existence or non-existence of a file and whether it meets the specified allocation level to be processed. It can also check whether records are present before the job is processed. For instance, JOBA can be set up so that it will only run when file ABC exists, and the file can be allocated exclusively and if records are present in the file.

Object

The job is dependent on the existence or non-existence of a QSYS type object and whether it meets the specified allocation level to be processed. For instance, JOBA can be set up so that it will only run when data area XYZ exists. The job can also be dependent on the existence or non-existence of an object found in the integrated file system. If the dependency is based on any object in the path, end the integrated file system path with a forward slash '/'.

Hardware configuration

The job is dependent on the existence or non-existence of a hardware configuration and its status to be processed. For instance, JOBA can be set up so that it will only run when device TAP01 exists and has a status of Available.

Network file

The job is dependent on the status of a network file in order to be processed.

Subsystem

The job is dependent on the status of a subsystem in order to be processed.

To work with job dependencies, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs**.
4. Right-click the **Job Name** whose dependencies you want to work with.
5. Select one of the following: **Job Dependencies**, **Active Dependencies** or **Resource Dependencies**. Refer to the online help for more information.

The Work Flow Manager

The Work Flow Manager allows you define units of work that consist of automated or manual steps. These units of work can then be scheduled or run interactively. The Work Flow Manager is located in the Advanced Job Scheduler container in the iSeries Navigator interface.

Each step within the work flow can have one or more predecessor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs and one or more successor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs. When a work flow starts, the first step is flagged to run. When it completes, the next step is flagged to run, and so on.

The following are some additional considerations when using the Work Flow Manager:

- You can manually start a work flow at any step. When you do so, you bypass all previous steps in the work flow.
- Automatic steps complete after all prior steps have completed. This includes all predecessor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs.
- After a step completes, the successor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs are flagged to run.
- Manual steps can complete in any sequence as long as the step's predecessor jobs have finished.
- You can mark completed manual steps as not complete and run them again as long as there are no subsequent incomplete automatic steps.
- You can cause a step to wait until the job completes before notifying of the step's completion by specifying predecessor jobs that are the same as the successor jobs of the previous step.
- You can notify other users when a particular step starts, stops, did not start by a specific time, or is taking too long. For example you can notify a user who is responsible for a particular manual step that the previous automated steps have completed.

When you use work flows, the activity log displays when the work flow started, the steps that were run, the status of automated steps (success or fail), when the work flow ended, and the final status of the work flow.

Table 23. Work Flow Example

Work Flow	PAYROLL
Scheduled	Every Friday at 1:00 p.m.
Notification	Clerk - Payroll work flow has started
Step 1	Automatic - Specifies a successor job to initialize payroll files
Step 2	Automatic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies the successor job from step 1 as a predecessor job for this step • Notifies Clerk that timecards can be entered
Step 3	Manual: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clerk completes after timecards are entered • Specifies a successor job to process timecard files and print timecard report • Notifies Supervisor if step is not completed within 120 minutes
Step 4	Automatic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies successor job from previous step as a predecessor job • No Successor jobs • Notifies Clerk to check timecard report
Step 5	Manual: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clerk will complete after checking reports • Specifies a successor job to process payroll

Table 23. Work Flow Example (continued)

Work Flow	PAYROLL
Step 6	Automatic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies the successor job from previous step as a predecessor job • No Successor jobs • Notifies Clerk and Supervisor that payroll has completed

In this example the work flow PAYROLL starts every Friday at 1:00 p.m. A notification is sent to the Clerk that the work flow has started.

Because Step 1 is automatic and does not have any predecessor jobs, it flags the successor job that initializes the payroll files to run and then complete. Step 2 has the successor job for Step 1 as its predecessor. Step 2 waits for the job that initializes the payroll files to complete. After it has completed, Step 2 notifies the Clerk that he can enter timecards. There are no successor jobs to flag to run.

The Clerk manually completes Step 3 after all of the timecards are entered. The successor job that processes the timecard file and prints a timecard report is flagged to run. As a precaution, the Supervisor is notified if the step is not completed within 120 minutes. Because the predecessor job for Step 4 is the successor for Step 3, Step 4 waits until the job that processes the timecard file and prints a timecard report has completed.

After the job completes the Clerk is notified that the timecard report can be checked. There are no successor jobs to flag to run. After the timecard report is checked, the Clerk manually completes Step 5. The successor job that processes the payroll and produces the checks is flagged to run.

Because the predecessor job for Step 6 is the successor for Step 5, Step 6 waits until the job that processes the payroll and produces the checks has completed. After the job completes, it notifies the Clerk and Supervisor that Payroll has completed. The checks can now be printed and distributed.

For more detailed information about the Work Flow Manager see the online help.

Creating a new work flow:

When you create a new work flow you will specify how the work flow is started, it's maximum process time, the task steps and their run sequence, scheduling, notification and documentation details.

About this task

To create a new work flow, following the following steps:

- In iSeries Navigator, expand **My Connections** → **your system** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Right-click Work Flow Manager** → **New Work Flow**.

The New Work Flow window appears.

What to do next

For more information about how to complete the New Work Flow window see the online help.

Once you have set up your work flow, you can manage the work flow by right-clicking the work flow name and clicking **Work Flow Status**.

Starting a work flow:

When you start a work flow, you can choose whether you want the work flow to start on the first sequence or on a specific sequence.

About this task

To start a work flow, follow the following steps:

1. From iSeries Navigator, expand **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Work Flow Manager** → **Right-click a work flow** → **Start**. The Start Work Flow window appears.
2. Select if you want the work flow to start on the first sequence or on a specific sequence. If you select to start at a sequence other than the first, all of the prior steps will be marked as completed.

What to do next

For more information about the Start Work Flow window, see the online help.

Working with work flows:

You can control and monitor the work flow as it runs by using the Work Flow Status window.

Before you begin

You can access the Work Flow Status window by expanding **My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Work Flow Manager** → **Right-click a work flow** → **Status**.

About this task

- The General window shows you the current status of the work flow.
- The Steps window provides you with a list of all steps currently defined to the work flow.
You can see whether a step has been defined to be either automated or manual and when the step has started and ended.
 - To mark a manual step as complete, select the correct step and check the **Complete** box.
 - Manual steps can be marked completed in any order if all of the predecessor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs for the step have completed.
 - Manual steps can be marked as not completed if there are no Automatic steps completed further in the list.
 - A work flow can be started manually at any step. This bypasses all previous steps.To refresh the list, click **Refresh**.
- The Documentation window shows you the documentation text for the work flow.

Monitoring job activity for the Advanced Job Scheduler

You can use the Advanced Job Scheduler to view the history or status of a job or a job group. You can also set up the activity retention, which is how long you want to retain the activity records for a job.

Scheduled job activity:

The scheduled job activity allows you to specify how long the Advanced Job Scheduler activity records are to be retained. The possible values are 1 to 999 days or occurrences. You can specify to keep activity for a certain number of days, or for a certain number of occurrences per job.

The following details about a scheduled job are displayed:

- Name The name of the scheduled job.
- Group The name of the job group for the job.
- Sequence The sequence number of the job within the group, if the job is in a job group.

- **Completion Status** The status of the job.
- **Started** When the job started running.
- **Ended** When the job ended.
- **Elapsed Time** The amount of time in hours and minutes the job took to process.

Specifying the activity retention:

These steps show how to specify the activity retention.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Scheduled Job Activity** and click **Properties**.

Viewing the scheduled job activity details:

These steps show how to view the scheduled job activity details.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Double-click **Scheduled Job Activity**.

Viewing the scheduled job activity for a specific job:

These steps show how to view the scheduled job activity for a specific job.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled jobs**.
4. Right-click the Job Name whose activity you want to display and click **Activity**.

Viewing the activity log details:

The activity log displays activity within the scheduler such as a job added, changed, or submitted. Security violations, sequences processed by a scheduled job, and any errors received are displayed. The dates and times for the previous activities are also displayed.

About this task

To view detailed message information, double-click a date and time. To view the activity log details, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Activity Log**. The current day's entries are shown. To change the selection criteria, select **Include** from the Options menu.

Viewing the activity log for a specific job:

These steps show how to view the activity log for a specific job.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled jobs**.
4. Right-click the **Job Name** whose activity log you want to display and click **Activity log**.

Results

You can also use the **Last Run** page of a job's properties to view the progress of a job. Specify the Set Step using Job Scheduler (SETSTPJS) command before or after a step in the CL program along with a description that states the progress of the job. When the job reaches the SETSTPJS command in the program, the associated description is displayed in the Last Run page and on your wireless device.

Monitoring for messages with Advanced Job Scheduler

Each command in the command list of a job can have message identifiers that are used for monitoring. When the job runs and an error message is issued that matches one of the messages entered for the selected command, the job logs the error but continues processing with the next command in the list.

About this task

If zeros are specified in either two or all four of the rightmost positions, such as ppmm00, a generic message identifier is specified. For example, if CPF0000 is specified, all the CPF messages are monitored.

To add message identifiers to a command, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
4. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Properties**.
5. Select the command from the list and click **Properties**.
6. Click **Messages**.
7. Enter the message identifiers to monitor and click **Add**.

Creating and working with local data area

A local data area is a portion of space that is allocated for a job. Not all jobs use their local data area but some do. Each command within a job has access to the job's local data area. You might want to use a local data area if you are scheduling a job that previously required you to manually specify additional parameters. Use the local data area to specify the additional parameters so you do not need to manually specify them each time the job starts.

About this task

To specify local data area information for a scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Scheduled Jobs**.
3. Right-click a job and click **Properties**.
4. Edit the Local Data Area window as necessary.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the local data area.

Creating and working with application controls and job controls

Applications are jobs that are grouped for processing. They are broader than job groups and do not necessarily process sequentially. Jobs in applications can process simultaneously and one job does not need to wait for another to process. All jobs within the application can be worked with and can have their own set of job defaults. Job controls are the defaults assigned to a job as you add it to the job scheduler as well as defaults used when the job is submitted.

About this task

Applications are jobs that have been grouped together for processing. For example, you might have a series of jobs that you use for payroll that you want to group together for an accounting process.

Job Controls are the defaults assigned to a job as you add it to the job scheduler as well as defaults used when the job is submitted. Job control defaults include such things as calendar, holiday calendar, job queue, job description and so on.

You can display all the existing applications/job controls on your system. You can add a new application/job control, add a new application/job control based on an existing one, or remove an application/job control. You can also select an application/job control and display its properties to make changes.

To create a new application/job control, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Applications/Job Controls** tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the application.
5. Type a description for the application.
6. Choose the contacts for the application. Contacts are the names of users who are contacted if you have a problem with a job within the application. You can specify up to 5 contacts per application. You can also choose to add or remove contacts from the contact list.
7. You can type additional information to help you identify the application. The information is associated with the new application. This information might be useful if any problems occur.

Working with notification

Within notification, you can perform a series of tasks. Notification allows you to specify recipient properties and report distribution list properties. In addition, you can send e-mail messages and set up an escalation list in case a recipient does not respond within a specified amount of time.

About this task

Before you can send an e-mail message, you need to specify a mail server to use for notification.

The following are highlights of the notification function of Advanced Job Scheduler:

Recipient

When scheduling a job, you can specify whether to send notification messages to specified recipients. You can send a notification message if a job fails, completes successfully, or does not start within a specified time limit. For each specified recipient, you need to define the recipient's properties. You can access the recipient's properties by selecting **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Recipients**, and then select a recipient from the list of recipients.

Report distribution list

Use a report distribution list to specify a list of spooled files that are eligible for distribution. Each spooled file produced by a job is checked to see if a match exists within the spooled file list. If so, the recipients associated with that spooled file receives a copy of the spooled file via e-mail, a duplicate of the spooled file in their output queue, or both. You can access report distribution lists by selecting **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Report distribution list**.

E-mail You can send an e-mail message to any recipient that is defined in the list of recipients as well as specific e-mail addresses. The recipient's properties must specify an e-mail address to send the message to. When sending an e-mail message, you can attach a spooled file. The spooled file can be sent in PDF format. In addition, you can specify an escalation list to use if the intended recipient does not respond within a specified period of time.

Specifying a spooled file to attach to an e-mail:

About this task

To specify a spooled file to attach to an e-mail, complete the following:

1. Expand **Basic Operations** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Click **Printer Output**.
3. Right-click the spooled file and click **Send via AJS**.
4. Specify a recipient, subject, and message.

Results

Note: This also can be done from **Output Queues**.

Escalation list

An escalation list specifies a list of recipients in descending order. The recipients are notified in the order that they are listed. If the first recipient does not respond to the message, the message is sent to the next recipient. This process continues until a response is made. To define an escalation list, go to **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Escalation Lists**.

Stopping a message from escalating:

About this task

To stop a message from escalating, complete the following:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Click **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **E-mail** → **Sent**.
3. Right-click the escalating message and click **Stop**.

Note: To view only escalating messages, select **View** → **Customize this view** → **Include** from the iSeries Navigator window. Then, in the **Type** field, select **Escalating**.

Working with library lists

Library lists are user-defined lists of libraries that are used by the Advanced Job Scheduler when a job is processing.

About this task

A **library list** is a user-defined list of libraries that is used by the Advanced Job Scheduler job to search for information it needs while processing. You can display library lists, add a new library list, add a new library list based on an existing one, or remove a library list, provided that it is not being used by a currently scheduled job.

You can select a list and display its properties to make changes. You can place up to 250 libraries on the library list.

To add a new library list, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Library Lists** tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the library list.
5. Type a description for the library list.
6. Click **Browse** to see a list of existing libraries, and click a library.
7. Click **Add** to add the list of selected libraries.

Results

Working with command variables

A command variable (previously known as a parameter) is a variable you can store and use in jobs submitted through the Advanced Job Scheduler. Examples of command variables include the beginning of each month, a division number, a company number, and so on.

About this task

Command variables (previously known as parameters) are variables that you store in the Advanced Job Scheduler and use in jobs submitted through the Advanced Job Scheduler. Command variables contain information that will be replaced inside the command string of a scheduled job. Examples of command variables include the beginning of each month, a company division number, a company number and so on. You can display command variables, add a new command variable, add a new command variable based on an existing one, or remove a command variable, provided it is not currently in use by a scheduled job.

You can select an existing command variable and display its properties to make changes.

To add a new command variable, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Command Variables** tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the command variable.
5. Type a description for the command variable.
6. Type the length of the command variable. The length can range from 1 to 90.
7. Choose how you want to supply the replacement value:
 - a. Specify the data to use for the command variable. You use any character in this field. The number of characters in the data cannot be greater than the length specified in the Length field.
 - b. Type a formula to calculate the date. (For examples, see the online Help.)
 - c. Type the program name that you use to retrieve the replacement value.
 - d. Type the library that you use to retrieve the replacement value.
 - e. Choose whether you want the replacement value retrieved from the system operator at run time.

Working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless works on two types of devices. A Wireless Markup Language (WML) device is an Internet-ready cellular phone. A Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) is a PDA or PC Web browser. Throughout this topic, the different devices are referred to as WML and HTML.

Hardware and software requirements

Before you run Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, make sure that you have met all the necessary software and hardware requirements.

The following elements are required to run the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless:

- Licensed Program 5722-JS1 V5R3: The Advanced Job Scheduler product that includes Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.
- A device to run the function
 - An Internet-enabled telephone with a wireless internet service
 - A PDA with a Web browser, a wireless modem, and a wireless internet service
 - A traditional Web browser on a workstation
- A server running i5/OS^(R) V5R3 or later in a TCP/IP network.

- A Web application server running on your central system, such as any of the following:
 - ASF Jakarta Tomcat Application server
 - Any other application server that runs on the central system, having the capability to host servlets
- HTTP Server installed on the system
- Identify your HTTP server with the Advanced Job Scheduler wireless feature. To do this, connect to the system that has Advanced Job Scheduler installed by using the character-based interface. Then, specify the following command:

```
CALL QIJS/QIJCINT
```

Selecting a device

Internet-ready telephones and wireless PDAs are a rapidly changing technology. They differ in screen size, in user interface, and in many other significant characteristics. The information in this topic helps you choose devices that are compatible with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless. Other wireless devices are also compatible if they support wireless Internet browsing, but the interaction might be different.

Internet-ready telephones Select an Internet-ready telephone to use with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

PDAs Select a PDA to use with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

PCs You can also use a traditional Web browser with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Configuring your wireless environment

To ensure that the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless run properly, you need to modify your web application server and firewall configuration.

About this task

Before you begin using Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, ensure that you have properly configured or set up the following items:

1. Configure your Web application server Set up Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless to run using an ASF Jakarta Tomcat servlet engine. These instructions specify how to create and start your Web application server. In addition, it specifies a program that you need to run before working with the wireless function of Advanced Job Server.
2. Configure your firewall This topic describes how to configure your firewall for iSeries Navigator for Wireless. These configuration steps also apply to Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless. View this topic to determine if you need to modify your firewall to gain access to systems from a wireless device.
3. Select a language The default language is set to English, but you can configure your device to display your language of choice.

Results

After you have completed these steps, you are ready to connect to your server and begin using Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Configuring your Web application server:

Before working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, you must start and configure the Web application server. The following procedures set up an ASF Tomcat servlet engine for HTTP Server (powered by Apache) to run Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Requirements

Before you begin, you must have QSECOFR authority and the following installed:

- IBM HTTP Server (5722-DG1)

Note: The following instructions will create a new instance of an HTTP Server; you cannot use the following instructions to set up Advanced Job Scheduler on an existing HTTP Server.

Initializing Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless on the HTTP Server

Running the following command will add the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless servlet to the Apache Software Foundation Jakarta Tomcat servlet engine. It will also set up an IBM HTTP Server (powered by Apache) named Advanced Job SchedulerP that listens for requests on port 8210.

Before working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, you need to initialize the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless on the HTTP server instance on your system. To do this, specify the following command from the character-based interface. This command runs a program that is supplied with your system.

```
CALL QIJS/QIJSINT
```

After you configure your Web application server and initialize the Advanced Job Scheduler instance on the Web application server, you can continue configuring your Advanced Job Scheduler wireless environment.

Configuring your firewall:

When you use iSeries Navigator for Wireless, you access your system from the Internet. If you have a firewall, you might have to modify your firewall setup to run iSeries Navigator for Wireless.

If you have never accessed your systems from the Internet and do not have a firewall set up, refer to the IBM Redbook *AS/400 Internet Security Scenarios: A Practical Approach* for strategies to set up a firewall. See the chapters about screened host architecture and screened subnet architecture.

Selecting a language:

When you connect to Advanced Job Scheduler for wireless, you can specify which language to use. If you do not want to specify a specific language, you can proceed to connecting to your system.

To specify a language, use the following URL:

```
host.domain:port/servlet/AJSPervasive?lng=lang
```

- *host*: The host name of the system that contains the product.
- *domain*: The domain where the host is located.
- *port*: The port that the instance of the Web server is listening to
- *lang*: The 2-character identifier for the language. The following is a list of available languages and their 2-character identifiers. (ar: Arabic de: German en: English es: Spanish fr: French it: Italian ja: Japanese)

Now you can begin working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Connecting to your i5/OS operating system

You can use your wireless device to connect to the system that contains the Advanced Job Scheduler product.

To begin using Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, specify the URL of your system into your wireless device. When pointing your device to the URL on your system, use the following format. Ensure that the end of the URL (/servlet/Advanced Job SchedulerPervasive) is typed exactly as shown:

host. domain: port/servlet/Advanced Job SchedulerPervasive

host: The System i host name. *domain:* The domain where the system is located. *port:* The port that the instance of the Web server is listening to. Default is 8210.

To specify a specific language to use, see Select a language.

Internet-ready telephone and PDA browser layout

If you have successfully connected to the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless feature on your system, the initial display contains summary information about your Internet-ready telephone or PDA. The summary specifies how current the information is, how many scheduled jobs exist, how many activity entries exist, and options to check the status of the job monitor or send a message to a recipient. In addition, the summary provides an overall status of OK or Attention at the top of the display. If Attention is specified, a job has a message that needs more attention. The job that requires attention contains an exclamation point.


Traditional browser layout

The traditional browser layout is exactly the same as the Internet-ready telephone and PDA display. However, the amount of content is smaller than the size of the display. Therefore, you can reduce the size of the Web browser to allow for more space to work with other applications while keeping the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless Web browser open. In addition, if you are using a traditional Internet browser on your PC, you can select to **Show all** from the Advanced Job Scheduler main menu. Then, you can view more content in a single Web page.

After you have successfully connected to your system, you might want to customize your connection.

Customizing your connection

Using your wireless device, you can customize the interface to your specific needs. For example, you might want to view only certain jobs and specify not to view the job's group name. You also might not want to access the list of scheduled activity. The Customize page on your wireless device allows you to filter jobs as well as change display preferences.

There are many ways to customize your connection whether you are using a PC, PDA, or Internet-ready telephone. To take advantage of these features, see the Job Scheduler for i5/OS  Web site.

Managing Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless

You can use your wireless device to work with Advanced Job Scheduler.

The following features are available using a wireless device:

View active, held, and pending jobs

You can view a list of the regular jobs (Advanced Job Scheduler jobs) or Management Central jobs that have the active, held, or pending state. You can further customize the jobs displayed by sorting by job type, name, or time. In addition, you can specify which data library contains the data for jobs and activities.

View job dependencies

You can view the predecessor and successor jobs for a particular job. A successor is a job that is dependent on one or more jobs (predecessors) to run. In turn, a successor job can be a predecessor job to other successor jobs.

Display messages

If a job has a message waiting for it, you can view the message text and reply to the message using your wireless device.

Start jobs

You can use your wireless device to submit jobs. The options you can specify when submitting a job depend on what wireless device you use.

Work with Advanced Job Scheduler activity

You can interact with your Advanced Job Scheduler activity from a wireless device. Each activity has different options based on the status of the activity entry.


Internationalization

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless uses the country and language codes associated with your iSeries[™] Java[™] Virtual Machine to determine what language and date/time formatting to use on your wireless devices. If the Java Virtual Machine defaults are not the codes you want to use, you can easily change it. See the online help for more details.

See the online help for more details on performing specific tasks.

Troubleshooting the Advanced Job Scheduler

When a job does not run at the scheduled time, these troubleshooting methods can help you find out what you can do.

To troubleshoot the Advanced Job Scheduler, first view the Frequently Asked Questions page at Job Scheduler for i5/OS  Web site. See the commonly asked questions that identify how to do certain functions with Advanced Job Scheduler.

Also, here are a list of items that you can review when a job does not run at the scheduled time:

Current fix level

The first thing you should verify is that your fixes are current. When you request fixes, be sure to request a list of all fixes. Not all fixes are included in the Cumulative PTF packages.

Check job monitor

- Job QIJSSCD should be active in the QSYSWRK subsystem. If it is not, process the Start Job Scheduler (STRJS) command.
- The job monitor can be in a loop if the status of the job is RUN for over ten minutes. If it is in a loop, end the job with *IMMED, and start the job monitor again (STRJS).
- If there is a message to answer, reply with a C (Cancel). The job monitor will go into a 90-second delay and then start monitoring again. Print the job log for the monitor job. This will contain the error messages.

Check the Advanced Job Scheduler log

Process the Display Log for Job Scheduler (DSPLOGJS) command for the job. Press F18 to go to the end of the list. Entries exist to explain why the job did not run. Examples of the entries include a resource failure, active or job dependency situation, or submission error.

Dependency on another job

If the job is dependent on another job, take option 10 from the Work with Jobs display to display job dependencies. Press F8 to list all predecessor jobs. A dependent job cannot run unless all the predecessor jobs show *YES in the **Complete** column.

Track a job's progress

If a job is not functioning properly, you can use the Set Step using Job Scheduler (SETSTPJS) command before or after a step in your CL program to help determine what the problem is. Specify the command along with description text in your CL program. Use this command as many times as necessary. The text description that is associated with the current command is

displayed in the Command step field on the Last Run page of the scheduled job properties. In addition, you can view the Command step field on the Status window of an active job. The Command step field is automatically updated every time the job encounters the SETSTPJS command. Use this command to help determine the progress of a job.

Collecting these data samples will help in your problem analysis:

Error message conditions

Print the job log for the interactive session, monitor job or scheduled job, depending where the error occurred.

Job schedule date is not correct

Process the DSPJOBJS command for the job with OUTPUT(*PRINT). Print a calendar report if a calendar is used within the job. Print a holiday calendar report if a holiday calendar is used within the job. Press the Print key to print the display of each fiscal calendar entry for the fiscal calendar used within the job.

Advanced Job Scheduler log

Always print the Advanced Job Scheduler log for the time period in question.

Files QAIJSMST and QAIJSHST

Files QAIJSMST and QAIJSHST in library QUSRIJS might need to be journaled before trying to reproduce the problem. Also, the QUSRIJS library may be needed by IBM support.

Related information for Management Central

Listed here are the Web sites and information center topics that relate to the Management Central topic collection.

Web sites

You can use a variety of Web sites to find more information about Management Central. These include:

- iSeries Navigator 

iSeries Navigator provides a wide variety of tools to simplify iSeries/OS management. Go to the iSeries Navigator home page to find information about iSeries Navigator, including functional release overviews, news about technical conferences, and other hot topics. You'll find links to a variety of information including release updates, functional overviews, FAQs, and more.

Other information

You will find links from various places in the Management Central topic to other information center topics that relate to Management Central.

- Single sign-on

If you have been looking for a way to simplify the task of managing user profiles on the System i product, single signon may be the answer for you. This information presents a single signon solution for your system, which uses the technology of Enterprise Identity Mapping (EIM), paired with your system's network authentication service. The single signon solution simplifies the task of managing user profiles, while reducing the number of signons that a user must perform to access multiple applications and servers.

This topic includes a scenario that demonstrates how to configure an entire system group to participate in a single signon environment. After administrators complete the scenario for propagating a single signon configuration across multiple systems, they can do the necessary configuration so that the entire system group can participate in the single signon environment.

- Experience Report: Configuring Management Central Connections for Firewall Environments

This report details Management Central connections and the configurations required to enable Management Central to operate within a variety of firewall environments. As a distributed management application, Management Central requires numerous incoming and outgoing TCP/IP socket connections. In contrast, the basic premise of a firewall is to restrict/modify incoming and outgoing connections.

- For information about installing and getting started with iSeries Navigator, refer to Getting to know iSeries Navigator in the Information Center.
- iSeries Navigator for Wireless


The iSeries Navigator for Wireless Web page gives you more information about the solution for pervasive computing.

Saving PDF files

To save a PDF on your workstation for viewing or printing:

1. Right-click the PDF in your browser (right-click the link above).
2. Click the option that saves the PDF locally.
3. Navigate to the directory in which you want to save the PDF.
4. Click **Save**.

Downloading Adobe Reader

- | You need Adobe Reader installed on your system to view or print these PDFs. You can download a free
- | copy from the Adobe Web site (www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep.html)  .

Code license and disclaimer information

IBM grants you a nonexclusive copyright license to use all programming code examples from which you can generate similar function tailored to your own specific needs.

| SUBJECT TO ANY STATUTORY WARRANTIES WHICH CANNOT BE EXCLUDED, IBM, ITS
| PROGRAM DEVELOPERS AND SUPPLIERS MAKE NO WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS EITHER
| EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR
| CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND
| NON-INFRINGEMENT, REGARDING THE PROGRAM OR TECHNICAL SUPPORT, IF ANY.

| UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES IS IBM, ITS PROGRAM DEVELOPERS OR SUPPLIERS LIABLE FOR
| ANY OF THE FOLLOWING, EVEN IF INFORMED OF THEIR POSSIBILITY:

- | 1. LOSS OF, OR DAMAGE TO, DATA;
- | 2. DIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR INDIRECT DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY ECONOMIC
| CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES; OR
- | 3. LOST PROFITS, BUSINESS, REVENUE, GOODWILL, OR ANTICIPATED SAVINGS.

| SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF DIRECT,
| INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO SOME OR ALL OF THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS
| OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

Advanced Job Scheduler

The Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program (5722-JS1) is a powerful scheduler that allows unattended job processing 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. This scheduling tool provides more calendar features and offers greater control over scheduled events than the Management Central scheduler. You can also view job completion history and manage notification of a job's status.

- | If you want to schedule jobs on several systems in your network, the product must be installed on each of your systems. If you want to use the Advanced Job Scheduler in iSeries Navigator (and in Management Central), then you must install the client plugin from a system that has the Advanced Job Scheduler installed.

However, it is not necessary to install the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program on each endpoint system in your Management Central network. When you install the Advanced Job Scheduler on the central system, jobs or tasks that you define on an endpoint system will gather job information that is needed from the central system. You must set up all job definition information on the central system.

If systems in your network have the Advanced Job Scheduler installed locally, you can schedule tasks outside of the Management Central network. Under **My Connections** in iSeries Navigator, you have access to the Advanced Job Scheduler on that local system when you expand **Work Management**.

- | **Note:** For ordering information, see the Job Scheduler for i5/OS  web site.

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless is a software application that allows you to access Advanced Job Scheduler on multiple Internet-accessible devices, such as an Internet-ready telephone, PDA Web browser or PC Web browser.

The wireless feature of Advanced Job Scheduler resides on your system, where Advanced Job Scheduler is installed, and allows you to access your jobs and activity, as well as send messages to recipients on your system, and stop and start the Advanced Job Scheduler monitor. Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless allows each user to customize the settings and preferences of their browsing experience. For instance, a user can show activity, display jobs, and customize the jobs they display.

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless allows you to access your jobs when you are normally unable to access a System i terminal or emulator. Connect to the Internet with your mobile device and enter the URL for the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless servlet. This launches a menu that gives you real-time access to Advanced Job Scheduler.

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless works on two types of devices. A Wireless Markup Language (WML) device is an Internet-ready cellular phone. A Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) is a PDA or PC Web browser. Throughout this topic, the different devices are referred to as WML and HTML.

Scheduling jobs with Advanced Job Scheduler

Follow these instructions to manage the Advanced Job Scheduler. You first need to install the licensed program, and then complete the tasks to customize the Advanced Job Scheduler. Finally, the remainder of the tasks allow you to work with and manage this scheduler.

What's new in Advanced Job Scheduler for V5R4

Several enhancements have been made to the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Add multiple commands to a scheduled task

- A command list is a stored set of instructions that Advanced Job Scheduler uses to process Management Central jobs. You can now add a series of commands to the scheduled Management Central task and control the run sequence of these commands. In the past you could only schedule one Management Central task (you could schedule one job to collect inventory, then another job to install fixes, and another one to run commands). Now you can create one Advanced Job Scheduler job that does all those activities.

When scheduling a task, you have the option to create a new scheduled job, create a new scheduled job based on an existing scheduled job, or add the task to an existing job. CL commands can also be added to Management Central scheduled tasks. For instance, to delay the job between tasks you can use the Delay Job (DLYJOB) command.

Tasks are processed on the endpoint system that was selected when the task was created. However, all CL commands are processed on the Central system. Each task must complete before the next task or CL command in the list will process.

After you click the **Schedule** button for a Management Central task, the next window prompts you to specify whether you want to create a new job, create a new job based on another job, or add to an existing job.

The **Command** field is located on the **Scheduled Job Properties - General** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Scheduled Jobs** → **Right-click a job** → **Properties**)

Notification Banner control

- When you distribute spooled files by using Report Distribution, you can now choose from a list of items and have them print in a large font on the banner page of the new spooled file. The default items are Job name and Spooled file name. You can select up to 2 banner items to print large.

The **Available banner items** field is located on the **Notification Properties** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Right-click Notification** → **Properties**)

Add send e-mail menu option on system

- This new menu option allows you to use the Advanced Job Scheduler to send an e-mail. When you select this menu item, the New E-Mail Message window appears. This is the same window that appears when you click **My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notifications** → **Right-click E-mail** → **New E-mail**.

My Connections → **Right-click a server** → **Send e-mail via AJS**

Distribute reports via the Basic Operations container

- The **Distribute Reports** window provides you with a place to manually distribute spooled files that are generated by a user job that is using a report distribution list. The job can be a job started by Advanced Job Scheduler or manually by a user. You will be prompted for a Report Distribution List. The Report Distribution List is a list of spooled files and the recipients to whom the spooled files will be delivered.

My Connections → **server** → **Basic Operations** → **Jobs** → **Right-click a job** → **Distribute Reports**

Availability schedule for e-mail recipients

- The availability schedule is the schedule for which the recipient is available to receive notification messages. You can select Always available, blank (never available) or a schedule option that was previously defined in the **Advanced Job Scheduler - Schedules** properties window.

The **Availability schedule** field is located on the **Recipient Properties - Email** window. (My Connections → server → Work Management → Advanced Job Scheduler → Notifications → Recipients → Right-click a recipient name → Properties)

Work Flow Manager

- The Work Flow Manager is a new tool that lets you define units of work that can consist of a combination of automated and manual steps. The units of work can then be scheduled or started manually. With various notification check points, users can be notified when steps have started, completed, did not run by a specific time, and exceeded the run limit. Each step may have predecessor and successor jobs. Predecessor jobs for a step must complete before the step can be automatically or manually completed. After a step has completed, successor jobs are set to run. It is common to specify predecessor jobs that are the same as the successor jobs of the previous step. This causes the step to wait until the jobs complete before notifying of the step's completion.

A good candidate for using the Advanced Job Scheduler Work Flow Manager is payroll processing. The payroll process consists of manual steps such as inputting time cards, validating reports, and printing and disbursing checks. The automatic steps can clear the batch work files, process time card input, run the payroll updates, and create the reports and checks.

My Connections → server → Work Management → Advanced Job Scheduler → Work Flow Manager

Integrated file system Object Resource Dependency

- The **Resource Dependencies** window displays information about a specific job's resource dependencies, including a list of dependencies, the requirements needed before continuing to run a job, and the time to wait before resetting a job, as well as allows you to add, remove, or view the properties of a particular resource dependency. New to V5R4 you can indicate if this dependency object is an integrated file system and specify the path.

My Connections → server → Work Management → Advanced Job Scheduler → Scheduled Jobs → Right Click a job → Resource Dependencies → Create a new dependency type object

Page Selection for notification spool file attachments

- Page Selection allows you to specify selection information based on text and its location within each page of a spooled file. You can specify that the text must exist at a specific location on each page or anywhere on the page. You can also subset the spooled file by selecting a page range.

The Page Selection function can be found at **My Connections → server → Work Management → Advanced Job Scheduler → Notification → Report Distribution List → Right-click a list → Properties → Click a spooled file → Click Properties**

Add option to not reset held jobs

- Currently there is a possible performance impact when jobs that are scheduled to run periodically are held. Each time the scheduled date and time is reached for a held job, the Advanced Job Scheduler server job determines if the job is still held, and if so, calculates the next date and time the held job should run. New for V5R4, you can suppress this calculation by making sure that the **Reset held jobs** field is unchecked. When the **Reset held jobs** field is unchecked, the next time the date and time is reached for a held job, the scheduled date and time fields are cleared, and no further processing activity is triggered on the held job. When you release the job, the server then calculates the next date and time the job should run. Using the **Reset held jobs** field applies to all jobs defined using the Advanced Job Scheduler.

The **Reset held jobs** field is located on the **Advanced Job Scheduler Properties - General** window. (**My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Right-click Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Properties**)

Installing the Advanced Job Scheduler

The first time that you connected to your Management Central server, iSeries Navigator asked you if you wanted to install the Advanced Job Scheduler. If you chose no and want to install it now, you can do so by using the Install Plug-Ins feature of iSeries Navigator.

1. From your **iSeries Navigator** window, click **File** from the menu bar.
2. Click **Install Options** → **Install Plug-Ins**.
3. Click the source system where the Advanced Job Scheduler is installed and click **OK**. Check with the system administrator if you are not sure what source system to use.
4. Enter your i5/OS **User ID** and **Password**, and click **OK**.
5. Click **Advanced Job Scheduler** from the Plug-in selection list.
6. Click **Next** and then click **Next** again.
7. Click **Finish** to complete and exit the setup.

Results

You have now installed the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Locate the scheduler

About this task

To locate the scheduler, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Management Central**.
2. Click **Scan Now** in response to the message that iSeries Navigator has detected a new component. You might see this message again when you access systems from the **My Connections** container.
3. Expand **My Connections** → of the system that has the Advanced Job Scheduler licensed program installed → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler**.

Results

After you have finished this preliminary work with the Advanced Job Scheduler, you are ready to set up the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Setting up the Advanced Job Scheduler

After you have installed the Advanced Job Scheduler, you need to configure it. After you have finished this preliminary work, you are ready to begin scheduling jobs.

Assigning the general properties

You can follow these instructions to assign the general properties used by Advanced Job Scheduler. You can specify how long to retain activity and log entries for the Advanced Job Scheduler, as well as the period that jobs will not be allowed to run.

About this task

You can specify the working days that jobs will process, and whether an application is required for each scheduled job. If you have a notification product installed, you can also set up the command that will be used to send a notification when a job completes or fails or you can use the Send Distribution using Job Scheduler (SNDDSTJS) command to notify a recipient

You can specify how long to retain activity records for jobs, as well as the period that jobs will not be allowed to run. You can specify the working days that jobs are allowed to process, and whether an application is required for each submitted job.

You can have a notification product installed which allows you to receive a notification (message) when a job ends. You can define the notification command that will send a notification when a job completes or fails or you can use the Send Distribution using Job Scheduler (SNDDSTJS) command to notify a recipient.

To set up the general properties for the Advanced Job Scheduler, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Specify the **Activity Retention**. The activity retention is how long you want to retain the activity records for jobs. The possible values are 1 to 999 days or occurrences. Click **Days** to specify if you want to keep activity for a certain number of days, or click **Occurrences per job** if you want to keep activity for a certain number of occurrences per job.
4. Specify the **Log retention**. The log retention specifies, in days, how long you want to retain Advanced Job Scheduler log entries.
5. You can specify a **Reserved period**. Jobs will not run during this time.
6. Specify the working days from the list. If a day is selected, it is designated as a working day and can be referenced when scheduling jobs.
7. Click **Application required for scheduled job** to designate whether an application is required for each scheduled job. **Applications** are jobs that have been grouped together for processing. This cannot be selected if existing jobs do not contain an application. If you choose to have an application required for certain jobs, go to working with applications.
8. Click **Calendars** to set up the scheduling, holiday, and fiscal calendars to use, set up holiday calendar, and set up fiscal calendar.
9. Click **Base periodic frequency on start time** to base the next run time on the start time for jobs that are scheduled to run periodically. For instance, a job is to run every 30 minutes, starting at 8:00 am. (For a job to run around the clock, specify 7:59 am as the ending time.) The job runs for a total of 20 minutes. With this field checked, the job runs at 8:00 am, 8:30 am, 9:00 am, and so on. If this field is not checked, the job runs at 8:00 am, 8:50 am, 9:40 am, 10:30 am, and so on.
10. Click **Reset held jobs** to continue to recalculate and display the next date and time a held job runs.
11. Specify a **Start time of day**. This is the time of day that you consider starts a new day. All jobs that are specified to use this time of day will have their job date changed to the previous day if the time the job starts is before the **Start time of day** field.
12. Specify a **Job monitor user**. This field specifies the name of the user profile to use as the owner of the monitor job. All jobs that have **Current user** specified use the user profile of the monitor job. The monitor job's default user profile is QIJS.
13. In the **Notification command** field, you can specify a command. Use the Send Distribution using Job Scheduler Notification (SNDDSTJS) command supplied with the system or a command specified by your notification software. The SNDDSTJS command uses the Advanced Job Scheduler notification function. The designated recipients can receive messages for normal and abnormal completions of job scheduled entries.

Specifying permission levels

This information explains how to specify permission levels for jobs, functions of the product, and provide new job default permissions.

About this task

You can specify permission levels for jobs, functions of the product, and provide new job default permissions to be associated with each Job Control/Application. The permissions for a job allow you to

grant or deny access to the following actions: submit, manage, permission, display, copy, update, or delete. You can also grant or deny access to individual functions of the product such as Work with Schedule Calendars, Send Reports, and Add Job.

Default permission levels are transferred to new jobs when they are added. In which case, the system will transfer the New Job permissions based on the application specified within the job definition. If no application is used, it will transfer the *SYSTEM New Job permissions.

Specifying permission levels for functions of the product:

About this task

To specify permission levels for functions of the product, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click **Permissions**.
4. Select a function and click **Properties**.
5. On the Function Permissions Properties window, edit the permission level as necessary. You can grant or deny access to the public or specific users.

Specifying permission levels to jobs:

About this task

To specify permission levels to jobs, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
3. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Permissions**.
4. On the Permissions Properties window, edit the permission level as necessary. You can grant or deny access to the public or specific users. In addition, you can specify submit, manage, permission, display, copy, update, or delete permissions.

Specifying default permission levels:

About this task

To specify default permission levels for new jobs associated with a Job Control/Application, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click **Job Controls/Applications**.
4. Select a job control or application from the list and click **New Job Permissions**.
5. On the Function Permissions Properties window, edit the permission level as necessary. You can grant or deny access to the public or specific users. In addition, you can specify submit, manage, permission, display, copy, update, or delete permissions.

Setting up a scheduling calendar

These instructions show how to set up a calendar of selected days for scheduling a job or job group. This calendar can specify the dates to be used for scheduling a job, or it can be used in conjunction with other schedules.

About this task

A **scheduling calendar** is a calendar of selected days that you can use for scheduling a job or job group. You can display scheduling calendars, add a new scheduling calendar, add a new scheduling calendar based on an existing one, or remove an existing calendar, provided it is not in use by a currently scheduled job.

You can select a calendar and display its properties to make changes. When you select a calendar, the details of the calendar are displayed under Details.

To set up a scheduling calendar, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the General page, click **Calendars**.
4. On the Scheduling Calendars page, click **New**.
5. Specify a **Name**.
6. In the **Description** field, specify text that describes the calendar.
7. Choose a **Reference calendar** if applicable. This is a calendar that was previously set up, and its properties will be applied to the new calendar as if you merged the two calendars. You will not have reference calendars if this is your first time using the Advanced Job Scheduler.
8. Select the dates that you want to include on your calendar. You must specify whether each date you have selected is for the current year or for every year in the **Selected date** field, before you can add another date to the calendar. Otherwise, any date you select will be deselected when you click a different date.
9. Specify if you want certain days of the week to be included on the calendar.

Setting up a holiday calendar

These instructions show how to set up a calendar for days that you do not want to allow processing for a scheduled job. Alternate days can be specified for each exception day, or processing can be skipped completely for that day.

About this task

A **holiday calendar** is an exception calendar for days that you do not want to process an Advanced Job Scheduler job. Alternate days can be specified for each exception day that you specify in a holiday calendar. You can display holiday calendars, add a new holiday calendar, add a new holiday calendar based on an existing one, or remove an existing calendar, provided it is not in use by a currently scheduled job.

Predefined schedules can be used in holiday calendars. You can create a schedule THIRDFRI that has a frequency of the third Friday of each month. When you use THIRDFRI in a holiday calendar, you cause all jobs that use this holiday calendar to not run on the third Friday of each month. One or more schedules can be used in a holiday calendar. Dates that are generated by the schedule will be shown on the calendar with a black border.

You can select a calendar and display its properties to make changes. When you select a calendar, the details of the calendar are displayed under Details.

Setting up a holiday calendar:

About this task

To set up a holiday calendar, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.

2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and select **Properties**.
3. On the General page, click **Calendars**.
4. Click the **Holiday Calendars** tab.
5. Click **New** and type a name for the calendar.
6. In the **Description** field, specify text to describe the calendar.
7. Choose a **Reference calendar** if applicable. This is a calendar that was previously set up, and its properties will be applied to the new calendar as if you merged the two calendars. You will not have reference calendars if this is your first time using the Advanced Job Scheduler.
8. Select the dates that you want to include on your calendar. You must specify whether each date you have selected is for the current year or for every year in the **Selected date** field, before you can add another date to the calendar. Otherwise, any date you select will be deselected when you click a different date.
9. Select an alternate day for the job to run. You can choose the previous working day, next working day, a specific date or not at all. To select a specific date, click **Specific alternate date**, and type the date.
10. Select specific days of the week to be included on the calendar.

Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar:

About this task

To add a holiday calendar to a scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the General page, click **Calendars**.
4. On the Holiday calendar page, select the holiday calendar and click **Properties**.
5. From the lower left hand corner of the tab, click **Schedules**.
6. Select the appropriate schedule and click **Add**.
7. To change the **Alternate day**, right-click the schedule from the **Selected Schedules** list and click the correct **Alternate Day**.

Setting up a fiscal calendar

If you want to divide the fiscal year into periods other than months, follow these steps to set up a fiscal calendar of selected days for scheduling a job or job group.

About this task

A *fiscal calendar* is a calendar of selected days that you can use for scheduling a job or job group. Use a fiscal calendar to define a fiscal calendar that is unique to your business. You can specify the start and end dates for each period in the fiscal year.

To set up a fiscal calendar, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the General window, click **Calendars**.
4. On the Fiscal Calendars page, click **New**.
5. Specify a **Name**.
6. In the **Description** field, type in text to describe the calendar.
7. Click **New** on the Fiscal Calendar Properties window to create a new entry.
8. Select a period and specify the start and end dates. You can specify up to 13 periods.
9. Click **OK** to save the fiscal calendar entry.

10. Repeat steps 7 through 9 as necessary.

Specifying a mail server to use for notification

A mail server is required if you want to send e-mail notification messages.

About this task

To set up the notification properties, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Notification** and click **Properties**.
4. Specify how many days to store messages. Specify a number in the **Message retention** field.
5. Specify an **Outgoing mail server (SMTP)**. For example, SMTP.yourserver.com.
6. Specify a **Port**. The default port number is 25.
7. Specify an e-mail address in the **Reply address** field. All reply messages are sent to this address.
8. Select **Yes** or **No** in the **Log send activity** field. Send activity is used for problem determination.
9. Specify the **Number of banner pages** allowed. This is used in Report Distribution.
10. Click **OK** to save the notification properties.

Setting up multiple scheduling environments

You can set up scheduling environments on the same system. By doing this, the original data library can act as the active data library and the copied data library can be used for testing. Thus you have two scheduling environments, one for testing and one that is the actual. In addition, the test data library can serve as a backup if there is a system failure on the original system. This feature gives you added protection if you create an error in the original data library because you have a backup copy of the data library.

About this task

There are several reasons why you might want to set up multiple scheduling environments. You might want to have a production version and a test version of the product running at the same time. This type of environment allows you to test various job schedules before actually using them in the data library on the production system. Or you might have a system that is the backup for one or more other systems in which you can use a data-mirroring product to replicate the Advanced Job Scheduler data library (QUSRIJS) from the source system into a library named differently. In this case, the data library is active until there is a problem with the source system.

A scheduling environment is a duplicate of the QUSRIJS library except with different data. For instance you can have another data library named QUSRIJSTST with all the objects as QUSRIJS. Each are considered data libraries.

To set up a multiple scheduling environment, follow these steps:

1. Obtain a data library from a system

To create a data library, you need to obtain a data library from a system. The following are three ways that you can obtain a data library from the system:

- Save the data library from a system and restore it onto the production system.
- Duplicate the data library on the current system using the Copy Library (CPYLIB) command.
- Mirror a data library on the test system. These systems should be running the same version release level.

Note: The copied, restored, or mirrored data library uses a different name than the original system.

2. Assign data libraries to users

After you obtain a test data library, add the data library to the Advanced Job Scheduler's properties and assign users to the data library. Therefore, when a user uses the Advanced Job Scheduler, the changes that the user makes are stored in the data library assigned to the user.

3. Copy jobs from test data library to actual data library (optional)

If you are using a data library for testing purposes, you might want to copy the jobs from the test data library to the actual data library in use. You only need to do this if you restored or copied a data library in step 1 and you have jobs that you want to move to the actual data library in use. You do not need to do this if you mirrored a data library from the actual system to a test system.

To copy jobs from one system's data library to another, use the Copy Job using Job Scheduler (CPYJOBJS) command. For more information about the specific parameters for this command, see the online help.

Assigning data libraries to users

The data library stores any changes that the user does using the Advanced Job Scheduler. A data library contains all the objects found in the QUSRIJS library. You can have an unlimited number of data libraries.

About this task

To assign data libraries to users, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the Data Libraries window, click **Add** to specify a data library. The data libraries that are listed are available to all users on the system.
4. On the Users window, click **Add** to add new users.
5. Specify a name.
6. Select a data library.
7. Click **OK** to add the user.
8. Click **Properties** to change the data library assigned to a user.

Results

With data libraries, you can set up multiple scheduling environments.

Managing the Advanced Job Scheduler

This information shows how to schedule jobs using the Advanced Job Scheduler.

Creating and scheduling a job

You can schedule a job and specify the commands that are associated with the job. You can also specify starting and ending commands to run a special version of a scheduled job.

About this task

To create and schedule a new scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Scheduled Jobs** and click **New Scheduled Job**.

Creating and scheduling a job group

You can set up and schedule a series of jobs that run consecutively in a specified order. Jobs within a job group require completion before the next job is submitted for processing.

About this task

Job groups are jobs that are grouped together to run consecutively in the order specified. A normal completion is required for each job in the group before the next job in the group is submitted for processing. If any job in the group does not complete normally, the processing stops for that group.

To create and schedule a new job group, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Job Groups** and click **New Job Group**.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the new job group.

Predefined schedules

You can create schedules that contain information needed to schedule a job or calculate exception dates within a holiday calendar.

About this task

For instance, you can create an ENDOFWEEK schedule that contains the day of the week to run, along with any additional calendars. The ENDOFWEEK schedule can then be used by all the jobs that match that scheduling frequency. You can access this feature only through iSeries Navigator.

You can use those same predefined schedules that are used in a job with your holiday calendars. You can create a schedule THIRDFRI that has a frequency of the third Friday of each month. When you use THIRDFRI in a holiday calendar, you cause all jobs that use this holiday calendar to not run on the third Friday of each month. You can use one or more schedules in a holiday calendar. Dates that are generated by the schedule will be shown on the calendar with a black border.

Setting up a predefined schedule:

To set up a predefined schedule, follow these steps.

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the Schedules tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the schedule.
5. Type a description for the schedule.
6. Select the frequency and dates that you want to include in your schedule, as well as any additional calendars.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the new schedule.

Adding a schedule to a scheduled job:

To add a schedule to a scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
4. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Properties**.

5. Click the Schedule tab.
6. From the upper right hand corner of the tab, select the appropriate Schedule option.

Adding a schedule to a holiday calendar:

A holiday calendar is an exception calendar for days that you do not want to process an Advanced Job Scheduler job. Alternate days can be specified for each exception day that you specify in a holiday calendar.

About this task

To add a schedule to a holiday calendar, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. On the **General** page, click **Holiday Calendars**.
4. On the Holiday Calendars page, select the holiday calendar and click **Properties**.
5. From the lower left hand corner of the tab, click **Schedules**.
6. Select the appropriate schedule and click **Add**.
7. To change the **Alternate day**, right-click the schedule from the **Selected Schedules** list and click the correct **Alternate Day**.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information.

Creating a temporary scheduled job

At times it might be necessary to run a scheduled job now or in the future in addition to its normal schedule. Use the Submit Job using Job Scheduler (SBMJOBJS) command, option 7 from Work with Jobs display, or the **Run** option from iSeries Navigator. It might also be necessary to process only a portion of the commands in the command list when setting up this special run.

About this task

The SBJJOBJS command allows you to specify the Starting and Ending command sequences. For instance, JOBA has 5 commands, sequences 10 through 50. You can specify on the SBJJOBJS command to start with sequence 20 and end with sequence 40. This bypasses sequence 10 and 50.

iSeries Navigator allows you to select a starting command within the command list and an ending command.

To run a special version of a scheduled job with iSeries Navigator, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
4. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Run**.
5. Specify whether to run the job now or in the future.
6. Select the starting and ending commands.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the new job.

Scheduling job dependencies

The Advanced Job Scheduler allows you to set up dependencies that reflect how jobs are processed in your environment. Dependencies determine when a job or group of jobs can run. You can select to have all dependencies met before a job can run, or you can have at least one dependency met before the job can run.

About this task

Dependencies include the following:

- **Job dependencies**

Job dependencies refer to predecessor and successor relationships for jobs. Predecessor jobs are those that must run before the successor job will run. A successor job is a job that runs after all the predecessor jobs have been processed. There can be multiple successor jobs for a single predecessor job as well as multiple predecessor jobs for a single successor job. In addition, you can specify that a dependent job be skipped if its predecessors and successors run on a day that the dependent job is not scheduled to run.

- **Active dependencies**

Active dependencies are lists of jobs that cannot be active when the selected job is to be submitted. If any of the jobs are active, the Advanced Job Scheduler will not let the specified job run. The selected job will be delayed until all the jobs in the list are inactive.

- **Resource dependencies**

Resource dependencies are based on several things. Each type that follows describes the areas that are checked. Following are the types of resource dependencies:

File The job is dependent on the existence or non-existence of a file and whether it meets the specified allocation level to be processed. It can also check whether records are present before the job is processed. For instance, JOBA can be set up so that it will only run when file ABC exists, and the file can be allocated exclusively and if records are present in the file.

Object

The job is dependent on the existence or non-existence of a QSYS type object and whether it meets the specified allocation level to be processed. For instance, JOBA can be set up so that it will only run when data area XYZ exists. The job can also be dependent on the existence or non-existence of an object found in the integrated file system. If the dependency is based on any object in the path, end the integrated file system path with a forward slash '/'.

Hardware configuration

The job is dependent on the existence or non-existence of a hardware configuration and its status to be processed. For instance, JOBA can be set up so that it will only run when device TAP01 exists and has a status of Available.

Network file

The job is dependent on the status of a network file in order to be processed.

Subsystem

The job is dependent on the status of a subsystem in order to be processed.

To work with job dependencies, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs**.
4. Right-click the **Job Name** whose dependencies you want to work with.
5. Select one of the following: **Job Dependencies**, **Active Dependencies** or **Resource Dependencies**. Refer to the online help for more information.

The Work Flow Manager

The Work Flow Manager allows you define units of work that consist of automated or manual steps. These units of work can then be scheduled or run interactively. The Work Flow Manager is located in the Advanced Job Scheduler container in the iSeries Navigator interface.

Each step within the work flow can have one or more predecessor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs and one or more successor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs. When a work flow starts, the first step is flagged to run. When it completes, the next step is flagged to run, and so on.

The following are some additional considerations when using the Work Flow Manager:

- You can manually start a work flow at any step. When you do so, you bypass all previous steps in the work flow.
- Automatic steps complete after all prior steps have completed. This includes all predecessor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs.
- After a step completes, the successor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs are flagged to run.
- Manual steps can complete in any sequence as long as the step's predecessor jobs have finished.
- You can mark completed manual steps as not complete and run them again as long as there are no subsequent incomplete automatic steps.
- You can cause a step to wait until the job completes before notifying of the step's completion by specifying predecessor jobs that are the same as the successor jobs of the previous step.
- You can notify other users when a particular step starts, stops, did not start by a specific time, or is taking too long. For example you can notify a user who is responsible for a particular manual step that the previous automated steps have completed.

When you use work flows, the activity log displays when the work flow started, the steps that were run, the status of automated steps (success or fail), when the work flow ended, and the final status of the work flow.

Table 24. Work Flow Example

Work Flow	PAYROLL
Scheduled	Every Friday at 1:00 p.m.
Notification	Clerk - Payroll work flow has started
Step 1	Automatic - Specifies a successor job to initialize payroll files
Step 2	Automatic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies the successor job from step 1 as a predecessor job for this step • Notifies Clerk that timecards can be entered
Step 3	Manual: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clerk completes after timecards are entered • Specifies a successor job to process timecard files and print timecard report • Notifies Supervisor if step is not completed within 120 minutes
Step 4	Automatic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies successor job from previous step as a predecessor job • No Successor jobs • Notifies Clerk to check timecard report
Step 5	Manual: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clerk will complete after checking reports • Specifies a successor job to process payroll

Table 24. Work Flow Example (continued)

Work Flow	PAYROLL
Step 6	Automatic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies the successor job from previous step as a predecessor job • No Successor jobs • Notifies Clerk and Supervisor that payroll has completed

In this example the work flow PAYROLL starts every Friday at 1:00 p.m. A notification is sent to the Clerk that the work flow has started.

Because Step 1 is automatic and does not have any predecessor jobs, it flags the successor job that initializes the payroll files to run and then complete. Step 2 has the successor job for Step 1 as its predecessor. Step 2 waits for the job that initializes the payroll files to complete. After it has completed, Step 2 notifies the Clerk that he can enter timecards. There are no successor jobs to flag to run.

The Clerk manually completes Step 3 after all of the timecards are entered. The successor job that processes the timecard file and prints a timecard report is flagged to run. As a precaution, the Supervisor is notified if the step is not completed within 120 minutes. Because the predecessor job for Step 4 is the successor for Step 3, Step 4 waits until the job that processes the timecard file and prints a timecard report has completed.

After the job completes the Clerk is notified that the timecard report can be checked. There are no successor jobs to flag to run. After the timecard report is checked, the Clerk manually completes Step 5. The successor job that processes the payroll and produces the checks is flagged to run.

Because the predecessor job for Step 6 is the successor for Step 5, Step 6 waits until the job that processes the payroll and produces the checks has completed. After the job completes, it notifies the Clerk and Supervisor that Payroll has completed. The checks can now be printed and distributed.

For more detailed information about the Work Flow Manager see the online help.

Creating a new work flow:

When you create a new work flow you will specify how the work flow is started, it's maximum process time, the task steps and their run sequence, scheduling, notification and documentation details.

About this task

To create a new work flow, following the following steps:

- In iSeries Navigator, expand **My Connections** → **your system** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Right-click Work Flow Manager** → **New Work Flow**.

The New Work Flow window appears.

What to do next

For more information about how to complete the New Work Flow window see the online help.

Once you have set up your work flow, you can manage the work flow by right-clicking the work flow name and clicking **Work Flow Status**.

Starting a work flow:

When you start a work flow, you can choose whether you want the work flow to start on the first sequence or on a specific sequence.

About this task

To start a work flow, follow the following steps:

1. From iSeries Navigator, expand **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Work Flow Manager** → **Right-click a work flow** → **Start**. The Start Work Flow window appears.
2. Select if you want the work flow to start on the first sequence or on a specific sequence. If you select to start at a sequence other than the first, all of the prior steps will be marked as completed.

What to do next

For more information about the Start Work Flow window, see the online help.

Working with work flows:

You can control and monitor the work flow as it runs by using the Work Flow Status window.

Before you begin

You can access the Work Flow Status window by expanding **My Connections** → **server** → **Work Management** → **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Work Flow Manager** → **Right-click a work flow** → **Status**.

About this task

- The General window shows you the current status of the work flow.
- The Steps window provides you with a list of all steps currently defined to the work flow.
You can see whether a step has been defined to be either automated or manual and when the step has started and ended.
 - To mark a manual step as complete, select the correct step and check the **Complete** box.
 - Manual steps can be marked completed in any order if all of the predecessor Advanced Job Scheduler jobs for the step have completed.
 - Manual steps can be marked as not completed if there are no Automatic steps completed further in the list.
 - A work flow can be started manually at any step. This bypasses all previous steps.To refresh the list, click **Refresh**.
- The Documentation window shows you the documentation text for the work flow.

Monitoring job activity for the Advanced Job Scheduler

You can use the Advanced Job Scheduler to view the history or status of a job or a job group. You can also set up the activity retention, which is how long you want to retain the activity records for a job.

Scheduled job activity:

The scheduled job activity allows you to specify how long the Advanced Job Scheduler activity records are to be retained. The possible values are 1 to 999 days or occurrences. You can specify to keep activity for a certain number of days, or for a certain number of occurrences per job.

The following details about a scheduled job are displayed:

- Name The name of the scheduled job.
- Group The name of the job group for the job.
- Sequence The sequence number of the job within the group, if the job is in a job group.

- **Completion Status** The status of the job.
- **Started** When the job started running.
- **Ended** When the job ended.
- **Elapsed Time** The amount of time in hours and minutes the job took to process.

Specifying the activity retention:

These steps show how to specify the activity retention.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Right-click **Scheduled Job Activity** and click **Properties**.

Viewing the scheduled job activity details:

These steps show how to view the scheduled job activity details.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Double-click **Scheduled Job Activity**.

Viewing the scheduled job activity for a specific job:

These steps show how to view the scheduled job activity for a specific job.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled jobs**.
4. Right-click the Job Name whose activity you want to display and click **Activity**.

Viewing the activity log details:

The activity log displays activity within the scheduler such as a job added, changed, or submitted. Security violations, sequences processed by a scheduled job, and any errors received are displayed. The dates and times for the previous activities are also displayed.

About this task

To view detailed message information, double-click a date and time. To view the activity log details, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Activity Log**. The current day's entries are shown. To change the selection criteria, select **Include** from the Options menu.

Viewing the activity log for a specific job:

These steps show how to view the activity log for a specific job.

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled jobs**.
4. Right-click the **Job Name** whose activity log you want to display and click **Activity log**.

Results

You can also use the **Last Run** page of a job's properties to view the progress of a job. Specify the Set Step using Job Scheduler (SETSTPJS) command before or after a step in the CL program along with a description that states the progress of the job. When the job reaches the SETSTPJS command in the program, the associated description is displayed in the Last Run page and on your wireless device.

Monitoring for messages with Advanced Job Scheduler

Each command in the command list of a job can have message identifiers that are used for monitoring. When the job runs and an error message is issued that matches one of the messages entered for the selected command, the job logs the error but continues processing with the next command in the list.

About this task

If zeros are specified in either two or all four of the rightmost positions, such as ppmm00, a generic message identifier is specified. For example, if CPF0000 is specified, all the CPF messages are monitored.

To add message identifiers to a command, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler**.
3. Click **Scheduled Jobs** to list jobs.
4. Right-click the scheduled job and click **Properties**.
5. Select the command from the list and click **Properties**.
6. Click **Messages**.
7. Enter the message identifiers to monitor and click **Add**.

Creating and working with local data area

A local data area is a portion of space that is allocated for a job. Not all jobs use their local data area but some do. Each command within a job has access to the job's local data area. You might want to use a local data area if you are scheduling a job that previously required you to manually specify additional parameters. Use the local data area to specify the additional parameters so you do not need to manually specify them each time the job starts.

About this task

To specify local data area information for a scheduled job, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Expand **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Scheduled Jobs**.
3. Right-click a job and click **Properties**.
4. Edit the Local Data Area window as necessary.

Results

Refer to the online help for more information as you fill in details for the local data area.

Creating and working with application controls and job controls

Applications are jobs that are grouped for processing. They are broader than job groups and do not necessarily process sequentially. Jobs in applications can process simultaneously and one job does not need to wait for another to process. All jobs within the application can be worked with and can have their own set of job defaults. Job controls are the defaults assigned to a job as you add it to the job scheduler as well as defaults used when the job is submitted.

About this task

Applications are jobs that have been grouped together for processing. For example, you might have a series of jobs that you use for payroll that you want to group together for an accounting process.

Job Controls are the defaults assigned to a job as you add it to the job scheduler as well as defaults used when the job is submitted. Job control defaults include such things as calendar, holiday calendar, job queue, job description and so on.

You can display all the existing applications/job controls on your system. You can add a new application/job control, add a new application/job control based on an existing one, or remove an application/job control. You can also select an application/job control and display its properties to make changes.

To create a new application/job control, follow these steps:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Applications/Job Controls** tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the application.
5. Type a description for the application.
6. Choose the contacts for the application. Contacts are the names of users who are contacted if you have a problem with a job within the application. You can specify up to 5 contacts per application. You can also choose to add or remove contacts from the contact list.
7. You can type additional information to help you identify the application. The information is associated with the new application. This information might be useful if any problems occur.

Working with notification

Within notification, you can perform a series of tasks. Notification allows you to specify recipient properties and report distribution list properties. In addition, you can send e-mail messages and set up an escalation list in case a recipient does not respond within a specified amount of time.

About this task

Before you can send an e-mail message, you need to specify a mail server to use for notification.

The following are highlights of the notification function of Advanced Job Scheduler:

Recipient

When scheduling a job, you can specify whether to send notification messages to specified recipients. You can send a notification message if a job fails, completes successfully, or does not start within a specified time limit. For each specified recipient, you need to define the recipient's properties. You can access the recipient's properties by selecting **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Recipients**, and then select a recipient from the list of recipients.

Report distribution list

Use a report distribution list to specify a list of spooled files that are eligible for distribution. Each spooled file produced by a job is checked to see if a match exists within the spooled file list. If so, the recipients associated with that spooled file receives a copy of the spooled file via e-mail, a duplicate of the spooled file in their output queue, or both. You can access report distribution lists by selecting **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Report distribution list**.

E-mail You can send an e-mail message to any recipient that is defined in the list of recipients as well as specific e-mail addresses. The recipient's properties must specify an e-mail address to send the message to. When sending an e-mail message, you can attach a spooled file. The spooled file can be sent in PDF format. In addition, you can specify an escalation list to use if the intended recipient does not respond within a specified period of time.

Specifying a spooled file to attach to an e-mail:

About this task

To specify a spooled file to attach to an e-mail, complete the following:

1. Expand **Basic Operations** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Click **Printer Output**.
3. Right-click the spooled file and click **Send via AJS**.
4. Specify a recipient, subject, and message.

Results

Note: This also can be done from **Output Queues**.

Escalation list

An escalation list specifies a list of recipients in descending order. The recipients are notified in the order that they are listed. If the first recipient does not respond to the message, the message is sent to the next recipient. This process continues until a response is made. To define an escalation list, go to **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **Escalation Lists**.

Stopping a message from escalating:

About this task

To stop a message from escalating, complete the following:

1. Expand **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Click **Advanced Job Scheduler** → **Notification** → **E-mail** → **Sent**.
3. Right-click the escalating message and click **Stop**.

Note: To view only escalating messages, select **View** → **Customize this view** → **Include** from the iSeries Navigator window. Then, in the **Type** field, select **Escalating**.

Working with library lists

Library lists are user-defined lists of libraries that are used by the Advanced Job Scheduler when a job is processing.

About this task

A **library list** is a user-defined list of libraries that is used by the Advanced Job Scheduler job to search for information it needs while processing. You can display library lists, add a new library list, add a new library list based on an existing one, or remove a library list, provided that it is not being used by a currently scheduled job.

You can select a list and display its properties to make changes. You can place up to 250 libraries on the library list.

To add a new library list, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Library Lists** tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the library list.
5. Type a description for the library list.
6. Click **Browse** to see a list of existing libraries, and click a library.
7. Click **Add** to add the list of selected libraries.

Results

Working with command variables

A command variable (previously known as a parameter) is a variable you can store and use in jobs submitted through the Advanced Job Scheduler. Examples of command variables include the beginning of each month, a division number, a company number, and so on.

About this task

Command variables (previously known as parameters) are variables that you store in the Advanced Job Scheduler and use in jobs submitted through the Advanced Job Scheduler. Command variables contain information that will be replaced inside the command string of a scheduled job. Examples of command variables include the beginning of each month, a company division number, a company number and so on. You can display command variables, add a new command variable, add a new command variable based on an existing one, or remove a command variable, provided it is not currently in use by a scheduled job.

You can select an existing command variable and display its properties to make changes.

To add a new command variable, follow these steps:

1. Open **Work Management** from your iSeries Navigator window.
2. Right-click **Advanced Job Scheduler** and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Command Variables** tab.
4. Click **New** and type a name for the command variable.
5. Type a description for the command variable.
6. Type the length of the command variable. The length can range from 1 to 90.
7. Choose how you want to supply the replacement value:
 - a. Specify the data to use for the command variable. You use any character in this field. The number of characters in the data cannot be greater than the length specified in the Length field.
 - b. Type a formula to calculate the date. (For examples, see the online Help.)
 - c. Type the program name that you use to retrieve the replacement value.
 - d. Type the library that you use to retrieve the replacement value.
 - e. Choose whether you want the replacement value retrieved from the system operator at run time.

Working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless works on two types of devices. A Wireless Markup Language (WML) device is an Internet-ready cellular phone. A Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) is a PDA or PC Web browser. Throughout this topic, the different devices are referred to as WML and HTML.

Hardware and software requirements

Before you run Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, make sure that you have met all the necessary software and hardware requirements.

The following elements are required to run the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless:

- Licensed Program 5722-JS1 V5R3: The Advanced Job Scheduler product that includes Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.
- A device to run the function
 - An Internet-enabled telephone with a wireless internet service
 - A PDA with a Web browser, a wireless modem, and a wireless internet service
 - A traditional Web browser on a workstation
- A server running i5/OS^(R) V5R3 or later in a TCP/IP network.

- A Web application server running on your central system, such as any of the following:
 - ASF Jakarta Tomcat Application server
 - Any other application server that runs on the central system, having the capability to host servlets
- HTTP Server installed on the system
- Identify your HTTP server with the Advanced Job Scheduler wireless feature. To do this, connect to the system that has Advanced Job Scheduler installed by using the character-based interface. Then, specify the following command:

CALL QIJS/QIJCINT

Selecting a device

Internet-ready telephones and wireless PDAs are a rapidly changing technology. They differ in screen size, in user interface, and in many other significant characteristics. The information in this topic helps you choose devices that are compatible with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless. Other wireless devices are also compatible if they support wireless Internet browsing, but the interaction might be different.

Internet-ready telephones Select an Internet-ready telephone to use with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

PDAs Select a PDA to use with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

PCs You can also use a traditional Web browser with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Configuring your wireless environment

To ensure that the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless run properly, you need to modify your web application server and firewall configuration.

About this task

Before you begin using Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, ensure that you have properly configured or set up the following items:

1. Configure your Web application server Set up Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless to run using an ASF Jakarta Tomcat servlet engine. These instructions specify how to create and start your Web application server. In addition, it specifies a program that you need to run before working with the wireless function of Advanced Job Server.
2. Configure your firewall This topic describes how to configure your firewall for iSeries Navigator for Wireless. These configuration steps also apply to Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless. View this topic to determine if you need to modify your firewall to gain access to systems from a wireless device.
3. Select a language The default language is set to English, but you can configure your device to display your language of choice.

Results

After you have completed these steps, you are ready to connect to your server and begin using Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Configuring your Web application server:

Before working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, you must start and configure the Web application server. The following procedures set up an ASF Tomcat servlet engine for HTTP Server (powered by Apache) to run Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Requirements

Before you begin, you must have QSECOFR authority and the following installed:

- IBM HTTP Server (5722-DG1)

Note: The following instructions will create a new instance of an HTTP Server; you cannot use the following instructions to set up Advanced Job Scheduler on an existing HTTP Server.

Initializing Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless on the HTTP Server

Running the following command will add the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless servlet to the Apache Software Foundation Jakarta Tomcat servlet engine. It will also set up an IBM HTTP Server (powered by Apache) named Advanced Job SchedulerP that listens for requests on port 8210.

Before working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, you need to initialize the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless on the HTTP server instance on your system. To do this, specify the following command from the character-based interface. This command runs a program that is supplied with your system.

```
CALL QIJS/QIJSINT
```

After you configure your Web application server and initialize the Advanced Job Scheduler instance on the Web application server, you can continue configuring your Advanced Job Scheduler wireless environment.

Configuring your firewall:

When you use iSeries Navigator for Wireless, you access your system from the Internet. If you have a firewall, you might have to modify your firewall setup to run iSeries Navigator for Wireless.

If you have never accessed your systems from the Internet and do not have a firewall set up, refer to the IBM Redbook *AS/400 Internet Security Scenarios: A Practical Approach* for strategies to set up a firewall. See the chapters about screened host architecture and screened subnet architecture.

Selecting a language:

When you connect to Advanced Job Scheduler for wireless, you can specify which language to use. If you do not want to specify a specific language, you can proceed to connecting to your system.

To specify a language, use the following URL:

```
host.domain:port/servlet/AJSPervasive?lng=lang
```

- *host*: The host name of the system that contains the product.
- *domain*: The domain where the host is located.
- *port*: The port that the instance of the Web server is listening to
- *lang*: The 2-character identifier for the language. The following is a list of available languages and their 2-character identifiers. (ar: Arabic de: German en: English es: Spanish fr: French it: Italian ja: Japanese)

Now you can begin working with Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless.

Connecting to your i5/OS operating system

You can use your wireless device to connect to the system that contains the Advanced Job Scheduler product.

To begin using Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless, specify the URL of your system into your wireless device. When pointing your device to the URL on your system, use the following format. Ensure that the end of the URL (/servlet/Advanced Job SchedulerPervasive) is typed exactly as shown:

host. domain: port/servlet/Advanced Job SchedulerPervasive

host: The System i host name. *domain:* The domain where the system is located. *port:* The port that the instance of the Web server is listening to. Default is 8210.

To specify a specific language to use, see Select a language.

Internet-ready telephone and PDA browser layout

If you have successfully connected to the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless feature on your system, the initial display contains summary information about your Internet-ready telephone or PDA. The summary specifies how current the information is, how many scheduled jobs exist, how many activity entries exist, and options to check the status of the job monitor or send a message to a recipient. In addition, the summary provides an overall status of OK or Attention at the top of the display. If Attention is specified, a job has a message that needs more attention. The job that requires attention contains an exclamation point.


Traditional browser layout

The traditional browser layout is exactly the same as the Internet-ready telephone and PDA display. However, the amount of content is smaller than the size of the display. Therefore, you can reduce the size of the Web browser to allow for more space to work with other applications while keeping the Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless Web browser open. In addition, if you are using a traditional Internet browser on your PC, you can select to **Show all** from the Advanced Job Scheduler main menu. Then, you can view more content in a single Web page.

After you have successfully connected to your system, you might want to customize your connection.

Customizing your connection

Using your wireless device, you can customize the interface to your specific needs. For example, you might want to view only certain jobs and specify not to view the job's group name. You also might not want to access the list of scheduled activity. The Customize page on your wireless device allows you to filter jobs as well as change display preferences.

There are many ways to customize your connection whether you are using a PC, PDA, or Internet-ready telephone. To take advantage of these features, see the Job Scheduler for i5/OS  Web site.

Managing Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless

You can use your wireless device to work with Advanced Job Scheduler.

The following features are available using a wireless device:

View active, held, and pending jobs

You can view a list of the regular jobs (Advanced Job Scheduler jobs) or Management Central jobs that have the active, held, or pending state. You can further customize the jobs displayed by sorting by job type, name, or time. In addition, you can specify which data library contains the data for jobs and activities.

View job dependencies

You can view the predecessor and successor jobs for a particular job. A successor is a job that is dependent on one or more jobs (predecessors) to run. In turn, a successor job can be a predecessor job to other successor jobs.

Display messages

If a job has a message waiting for it, you can view the message text and reply to the message using your wireless device.

Start jobs

You can use your wireless device to submit jobs. The options you can specify when submitting a job depend on what wireless device you use.

Work with Advanced Job Scheduler activity

You can interact with your Advanced Job Scheduler activity from a wireless device. Each activity has different options based on the status of the activity entry.


Internationalization

Advanced Job Scheduler for Wireless uses the country and language codes associated with your iSeries[™] Java[™] Virtual Machine to determine what language and date/time formatting to use on your wireless devices. If the Java Virtual Machine defaults are not the codes you want to use, you can easily change it. See the online help for more details.

See the online help for more details on performing specific tasks.

Troubleshooting the Advanced Job Scheduler

When a job does not run at the scheduled time, these troubleshooting methods can help you find out what you can do.

To troubleshoot the Advanced Job Scheduler, first view the Frequently Asked Questions page at Job Scheduler for i5/OS  Web site. See the commonly asked questions that identify how to do certain functions with Advanced Job Scheduler.

Also, here are a list of items that you can review when a job does not run at the scheduled time:

Current fix level

The first thing you should verify is that your fixes are current. When you request fixes, be sure to request a list of all fixes. Not all fixes are included in the Cumulative PTF packages.

Check job monitor

- Job QIJSSCD should be active in the QSYSWRK subsystem. If it is not, process the Start Job Scheduler (STRJS) command.
- The job monitor can be in a loop if the status of the job is RUN for over ten minutes. If it is in a loop, end the job with *IMMED, and start the job monitor again (STRJS).
- If there is a message to answer, reply with a C (Cancel). The job monitor will go into a 90-second delay and then start monitoring again. Print the job log for the monitor job. This will contain the error messages.

Check the Advanced Job Scheduler log

Process the Display Log for Job Scheduler (DSPLOGJS) command for the job. Press F18 to go to the end of the list. Entries exist to explain why the job did not run. Examples of the entries include a resource failure, active or job dependency situation, or submission error.

Dependency on another job

If the job is dependent on another job, take option 10 from the Work with Jobs display to display job dependencies. Press F8 to list all predecessor jobs. A dependent job cannot run unless all the predecessor jobs show *YES in the **Complete** column.

Track a job's progress

If a job is not functioning properly, you can use the Set Step using Job Scheduler (SETSTPJS) command before or after a step in your CL program to help determine what the problem is. Specify the command along with description text in your CL program. Use this command as many times as necessary. The text description that is associated with the current command is

displayed in the Command step field on the Last Run page of the scheduled job properties. In addition, you can view the Command step field on the Status window of an active job. The Command step field is automatically updated every time the job encounters the SETSTPJS command. Use this command to help determine the progress of a job.

Collecting these data samples will help in your problem analysis:

Error message conditions

Print the job log for the interactive session, monitor job or scheduled job, depending where the error occurred.

Job schedule date is not correct

Process the DSPJOBJS command for the job with OUTPUT(*PRINT). Print a calendar report if a calendar is used within the job. Print a holiday calendar report if a holiday calendar is used within the job. Press the Print key to print the display of each fiscal calendar entry for the fiscal calendar used within the job.

Advanced Job Scheduler log

Always print the Advanced Job Scheduler log for the time period in question.

Files QAIJSMST and QAIJSHST

Files QAIJSMST and QAIJSHST in library QUSRIJS might need to be journaled before trying to reproduce the problem. Also, the QUSRIJS library may be needed by IBM support.

Appendix. Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation
Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106-0032, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation

Software Interoperability Coordinator, Department YBWA
3605 Highway 52 N
Rochester, MN 55901
U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

- | The licensed program described in this information and all licensed material available for it are provided
- | by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement,
- | IBM License Agreement for Machine Code, or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.

Each copy or any portion of these sample programs or any derivative work, must include a copyright notice as follows:

© (your company name) (year). Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs. © Copyright IBM Corp. _enter the year or years_. All rights reserved.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

- | i5/OS
- | IBM
- | IBM (logo)
- | iSeries
- | OS/400
- | System i
- | System i5

Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

- | Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Terms and conditions

Permissions for the use of these publications is granted subject to the following terms and conditions.

Personal Use: You may reproduce these publications for your personal, noncommercial use provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not distribute, display or make derivative works of these publications, or any portion thereof, without the express consent of IBM.

Commercial Use: You may reproduce, distribute and display these publications solely within your enterprise provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not make derivative works of these publications, or reproduce, distribute or display these publications or any portion thereof outside your enterprise, without the express consent of IBM.

Except as expressly granted in this permission, no other permissions, licenses or rights are granted, either express or implied, to the publications or any information, data, software or other intellectual property contained therein.

IBM reserves the right to withdraw the permissions granted herein whenever, in its discretion, the use of the publications is detrimental to its interest or, as determined by IBM, the above instructions are not being properly followed.

You may not download, export or re-export this information except in full compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including all United States export laws and regulations.

IBM MAKES NO GUARANTEE ABOUT THE CONTENT OF THESE PUBLICATIONS. THE PUBLICATIONS ARE PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.



Printed in USA